# SAT-based Model Checking Using Interpolation and IC3 

Research Thesis

# In Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy 

Yakir Vizel

Sumbitted to the Senate of Technion - Israel Institute of Technology
Iyar, $5774 \quad$ Haifa May, 2014

This research thesis was done under the supervision of Professor Orna Grumberg in the Department of Computer Science.

First and foremost, I would like to thank my advisor, Professor Orna Grumberg. She has patiently guided me in my journey as a new researcher, assisting whenever possible, while allowing me to grow and practice my academic independence. I had the honor to work with a world leading researcher in the domain of Formal Verification and I am confident that she has given me all the tools required for my future journey and success.

I would like to thank Dr. Sharon Shoham, Dr. Alex Nadel and Dr. Vadim Ryvchin for a fruitful and successful collaboration. I am sure that this experience will be helpful in the future. In addition, I would like to thank Dr. Ziyad Hanna for the support and the oppertunity he gave me by allowing me to bring my research to life in an industrial enviornment. By doing so, he gave me the tools to realize how my research affects real life problems.

I would like to thank my parents, Israel and Sima Vizel, who have taught me to question, explore, persist, and believe in myself. They supported me in every aspect of my studies, from elementary school to graduate school. I also thank my brother and sister, Shay and Shir, for supporting me morally and appriciating my work. They were all an inspiration during my research.

The generous financial help of The Technion is gratefully acknowledged.

## List of Publications

- Yakir Vizel, Vadim Ryvchin, Alexander Nadel "Efficient Generation of Small Interpolants in CNF, 25th International Conference on Computer Aided Verification (CAV'13), Saint Petersburg, Russia.
- Yakir Vizel ,Orna Grumberg, Sharon Shoham "Intertwined ForwardBackward Reachability Analysis Using Interpolants", International Conference on Tools and Algorithms for the Construction and Analysis of Systems 2013 (TACAS'13), Rome, Italy.
- Yakir Vizel ,Orna Grumberg, Sharon Shoham "Lazy Abstraction and SAT-based Reachability in Hardware Model Checking", International Conference on Formal Methods in Computer-Aided Design 2012 (FMCAD'12), Cambridge, United Kingdom.
- Yakir Vizel ,Orna Grumberg, "Interpolation-Sequence Based Model Checking", International Conference on Formal Methods in ComputerAided Design 2009 (FMCAD’09), Austin, Texas.


## Table of Contents

Table of Contents ..... i
List of Figures ..... v
List of Tables ..... viii
Abstract ..... 1
1 Introduction ..... 3
1.1 Challenges in SAT-based Model Checking ..... 4
1.2 Our Approaches for SAT-based Model Checking Enhancements ..... 7
2 Preliminaries ..... 10
2.1 Satisfiability ..... 12
2.2 Bounded Model Checking ..... 13
2.3 Interpolation ..... 15
2.4 Interpolation Based Model Checking (ITP) ..... 20
2.4.1 Symbolic Model Checking ..... 20
2.4.2 ITP Detailed ..... 21
3 Exploiting Interpolation-Sequence in Model Checking ..... 26
3.1 Interpolation-Sequence Based Model Checking (ISB) ..... 27
3.2 Comparing Interpolation-Sequence Based MC to Interpolation Based MC ..... 32
3.3 Implementation Details and Experimental Results ..... 35
3.3.1 Implementation Details ..... 35
3.3.2 Experimental Results ..... 35
4 Intertwined Forward-Backward Reachability Analysis Us- ing Interpolants ..... 39
4.1 Related Work ..... 43
4.2 Using Interpolants for Forward and Backward Analysis ..... 45
4.2.1 Forward and Backward Interpolants ..... 45
4.2.2 Forward and Backward Reachability Sequences ..... 47
4.3 Dual Approximated Reachability ..... 49
4.3.1 First Iteration of DAR ..... 49
4.3.2 General Iteration of DAR ..... 50
4.3.3 Correctness of DAR ..... 62
4.4 Experimental Results ..... 64
5 Efficient Generation of Small Interpolants in Conjuctive Normal Form ..... 69
5.0.1 Related Work ..... 72
5.1 Preliminaries ..... 73
5.2 Generating Interpolant Approximation in CNF ..... 75
5.3 Using $B_{\text {weak }}$-Interpolants In Model Checking ..... 86
5.3.1 Interpolation-Based Model Checking Revisited ..... 86
5.3.2 Transforming a $B_{\text {weak }}$-Interpolant Into an Interpolant Using Inductive Reasoning ..... 88
5.3.3 CNF-ITP: Using $B_{\text {weak }}$-Interpolants in ITP ..... 92
5.4 Experimental Results ..... 94
5.5 Conclusions ..... 97
6 Lazy Abstraction and SAT-based Reachability ..... 101
6.0.1 Related Work ..... 104
6.1 Preliminaries ..... 104
6.1.1 SAT-based Reachability via IC3 ..... 106
6.1.2 Abstraction ..... 107
6.1.3 Lazy Abstraction ..... 108
6.2 Lazy Abstraction and IC3 ..... 109
6.2.1 Abstract Model Checking via A-IC3 ..... 111
6.2.2 Detailed Description of Strengthening ..... 116
6.2.3 Refinement ..... 124
6.2.4 Correctness Arguments ..... 127
6.2.5 Monotonicity of the Abstraction Sequence ..... 129
6.3 Experimental Results ..... 130
7 Conclusion ..... 136
Bibliography ..... 136
Hebrew Abstract ..... 144

## List of Figures

2.1 Bounded model checking ..... 14
2.2 Interpolation-Based Model Checking (ITP) ..... 23
2.3 Inner loop of ITP ..... 24
3.1 Updating the reachability sequence $\bar{F}_{[k]}$ ..... 29
3.2 Checking if a fixpoint has been reached ..... 30
3.3 The ISB Algorithm ..... 30
3.4 Runtime (in seconds) of falsified properties on Intel's micro- architecture. ..... 35
3.5 Runtime (in seconds) of verified properties on Intel's micro- architecture. ..... 36
4.1 Dual Approximated Reachability ..... 50
4.2 Local strengthening procedures ..... 59
4.3 Global strengthening procedure ..... 63
4.4 Y-axis represents DAR's runtime in seconds. X-axis repre- sents runtime in seconds for the compared algorithm (IC3 or ITP). Points below the diagonal are in favor of DAR. ..... 65
5.1 An example of a resolution refutation. Assume $A=\left\{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{4}\right\}$ and $B=\left\{\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{3}\right\}$. ..... 76
5.2 Interpolant by $A$-Local Variables Elimination ..... 76
5.3 Interpolant Generation with Clause-Interpolants ..... 79
5.4 Incomplete Variable Elimination ..... 83
$5.5 \quad B_{\text {weak }}$-Interpolant Generation ..... 85
5.6 Interpolation-Based Model Checking (ITP) ..... 87
5.7 Inner loop of ITP ..... 88
5.8 Find the clauses needed for the $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant $I_{w}$ to be B-adequate ..... 91
5.9 Inner loop of CNF-ITP ..... 94
5.10 Comparing sizes of generated interpolants. Y-axis represents interpolants generated by CNF-ITP and X-axis represents interpolants generated by ITP. ..... 96
5.11 Comparing CNF-ITP's runtime vs IC3 and ITP. ..... 99
6.1 L-IC3 ..... 110
6.2 A-IC3 ..... 112
6.3 Iterative strengthening of A-IC3 ..... 117
6.4 BlockState procedure of A-IC3 ..... 120
6.5 Refine procedure of A-IC3 ..... 124
6.6 Runtime information for L-IC3 and IC3 ..... 131

## List of Tables

3.1 Comparing interpolants computed by ISB and ITP ..... 34
3.2 ISB: Verified properties and their running parameters. ..... 36
3.3 ISB: Models used for testing ..... 38
4.1 DAR: Parameters of the experiments ..... 68
5.1 CNF-ITP: Parameters of experiments ..... 100
6.1 L-IC3: Lazy abstraction effect ..... 134
6.2 L-IC3: Running parameters for various properties ..... 135

## Abstract

SAT-based model checking is currently one of the most successful approaches to checking very large systems. In its early days, SAT-based (bounded) model checking was mainly used for bug hunting. The introduction of interpolation and $I C 3 \backslash P D R$ enable efficient complete algorithms that can provide full verification as well.

In this thesis, we preset several approaches to enhancing SAT-based model checking. They are all based on iteratively computing an over-approximation of the set of reachable system states. They use different mechanisms to achieve scalability and faster convergence (empirically).

The first approach uses interpolation-sequence, rather than interpolation, in order to obtain a more precise over-approximation of the set of reachable states and avoids the addition of interpolants into the BMC formula.

The second approach extracts interpolants in both forward and backward manner and exploits them for an intertwined approximated forward and backward reachability analysis. The approach is also mostly local and avoids unrolling of the checked model as much as possible. By that, the size of interpolants is mostly kept small. This results in an efficient and complete SAT-based verification algorithm.

The third approach takes a different direction. It suggests a new method for interpolant computation which is specific for model checking. As a first step, it approximates the interpolant using a proof generated by the SAT solver. The second step transforms the approximated interpolant into a real
interpolant by using the structure of the model checking problem and applying inductive reasoning. This results in an efficient procedure that generates compact interpolants in Conjunctive Normal Form.

The last approach we present integrates lazy abstraction with IC3 in order to achieve scalability. Lazy abstraction, originally developed for software model checking, is a specific type of abstraction that allows hiding different model details at different steps of the verification. We find the IC3 algorithm most suitable for lazy abstraction since its state traversal is performed by means of local reachability checks, each involving only two consecutive sets. A different abstraction can therefore be applied in each of the local checks.

The techniques presented in this thesis make SAT-based model checking more scalable. The thesis focuses on hardware model checking, but the presented ideas can be extended to other systems as well.

## Chapter 1

## Introduction

Computerized systems dominate almost every aspect of our lives and their correct behavior is essential. Model checking [21, 51, 20] is an automated verification technique for checking whether a given system satisfies a desired property. The system is usually described as a finite-state model in a form of a state transition graph. The specification is given as a temporal logic formula. Unlike testing or simulation based verification, model checking tools are exhaustive in the sense that they traverse all behaviors of the system, and either confirm that the system behaves correctly or present a counterexample.

Model checking has been successfully applied to verifying hardware and software systems. Its main limitation, however, is the state explosion problem which arises due to the huge state space of real-life systems. The size of the model induces high memory and time requirements that may make model checking not applicable to large systems. Much of the research in this area is dedicated to increasing model checking applicability and scalability.

The first significant step in this direction was the introduction of BDDs [12] into model checking. BDD-based Symbolic Model Checking (SMC) [13] enabled model checking of real-life hardware designs with a few hundreds of state elements. However, current design blocks with well-defined functionality typically have thousands of state elements and more. To handle designs
of that scale, model checking has been reduced to satisfiability (SAT) and SAT-based Bounded Model Checking (BMC) [5] has been developed. Its main drawback, however, is its orientation towards "bug-hunting" rather than full verification.

Several approaches have been suggested to remedy the problem and make it applicable for verification. Induction [54], interpolation [43, 59, 60], interpolation sequence [57, 16], IC3/PDR [8, 28], and L-IC3 [58] developed different techniques for SAT-based Unbounded Model Checking (UMC), which provide full verification. All techniques are based on finding an inductive invariant that proves the correctness of the verified property. More precisely, most of these techniques explicitly find the inductive invariant by approximating the reachable states in the verified system.

Of these SAT-based unbounded model checking techniques, L-IC3 and [16] also use Abstraction-refinement [22], which is another well known methodology for tackling the state-explosion problem. Abstraction hides model details that are not relevant for the checked property. The resulting abstract model is then smaller, and therefore easier to handle by model checking algorithms. Lazy abstraction [41, 44], developed for software model checking, is a specific type of abstraction that allows hiding different model details at different steps of the verification.

We now go through challenges in SAT-based model checking and our techniques for improvements.

### 1.1 Challenges in SAT-based Model Checking

This work focuses on improving Interpolation based model checking as was first introduced in [43], and improving IC3/PDR [8, 28]. These methods compute an over-approximated sets of the system's reachable states while checking that the specification is not violated. The approximation of reach-
able states is done via a form of generalization. Basically, generalization is the process of deducing a general fact from knowledge about a single case.

The algorithm that appears in [43], which we refer to as ITP, computes over-approximations of reachable states using Craig interpolants [23]. The interpolants are extracted from a proof of unsatisfiability, generated by a SAT-solver when solving a BMC formula, and they represent an overapproximation of states reachable from the initial states after one transition. The computed over-approximations are used to perform a SAT-based reachability analysis and to fully verify a specification.

In the context of ITP, interpolants are used as a generalization mechanism. By solving a BMC formula of a specific length, and knowing that there is no counterexample of this specific length, interpolants help to generalize this fact into general information about the system's reachable states.

ITP works iteratively and is based on a nested loop. The outer loop controls the bound of the BMC formulas that are checked inside the inner loop. The inner loop iteratively solves a fixed bound BMC formulas. If a BMC formula is unsatisfiable, an interpolant representing an over-approximation of reachable states is extracted ${ }^{1}$. These over-approximations are used to check whether all reachable states in the system have been checked. In case all reachable states are checked we say that a fixpoint is found. In this case, the algorithm terminates concluding that the property holds. Otherwise, the computed interpolant replaces the set of initial states from which the bounded search starts and a new BMC formula is checked (with new initial states). Due to the usage of "new" initial states in the BMC formula, there are cases where such a modified BMC formula is satisfiable. Since the interpolants represent an over-approximation of reachable states, ITP cannot conclude that a counterexample exists when a modified BMC formula is satisfiable. In these cases the inner loop is stopped and the bound is increased by the outer loop.

[^0]There are, therefore, two inherent weaknesses we try to solve. The first weakness is the sensitivity of ITP to the size of the interpolants. Since interpolants are fed back into the BMC formula (when replacing the initial states with an interpolant), their size may render the BMC problem intractable. The second weakness is the need to constantly increase the bound of the checked BMC formula in order to increase the precision of the computed over-approximations.

In [8] an alternative SAT-based algorithm, called IC3, is introduced. Similarly to ITP, IC3 also computes over-approximations of sets of reachable states. However, while ITP unrolls the model in order to obtain more precise approximations, IC3, improves the precision of the approximations by performing many local reachability checks between consecutive time frames that do not require unrolling.

While ITP blindly relies on the SAT-solver to search for a counterexample and generate information about reachable states (in the form of interpolants), IC3 approaches the problem in a different manner. Instead of blindly relying on the SAT-solver, it guides both the search for the counterexample and the computation of reachable states.

Conceptually, IC3 is based on a backward search. Starting with a bad state, it uses a SAT-solver to repeatedly find a one-step predecessor state. Thus, all SAT-queries are local, involving only one instance of the transition relation, and no BMC-unrolling is used. If, when performing the backward search, the bad suffix can be extended all the way to the initial states a counterexample is found. Otherwise, when a suffix cannot be extended further, a process called inductive generalization $[9,7,8]$, is used to learn a consequence that blocks the current suffix. More precisely, due to inductive generalization, IC3 generalizes the fact that a single state is unreachable to a consequence representing a set of unreachable states. The conjunction of all such learned consequences is used to represent an over-approximation of reachable states.

While inductive generalization is what enables IC3 to learn strong consequences, it is also its weakness. When inductive generalization fails to generalize a single unreachable state into a set of unreachable states efficiently, IC3 falls into a form of state-enumeration, thus making the algorithm inefficient.

### 1.2 Our Approaches for SAT-based Model Checking Enhancements

We aim at solving the weaknesses of SAT-based methods as described in the previous section. In the context of interpolation, we deal with interpolants' size by using them or computing them differently, such that their size is either reduced or has less affect on the underlying model checking problem. In the context of IC3, we integrate abstraction into the algorithm in order to make it more efficient. We now go into more detail about the content of this thesis.

In Chapter 3, we present an interpolation-sequence [38, 44] based algorithm. The algorithm, referred to as ISB, combines BMC with interpolationsequence. ISB works by searching for a counterexample via repeatedly posing BMC queries to a SAT-solver. If a BMC query is satisfied, a counterexample is found. Otherwise, the SAT-solver generates a proof of unsatisability. An interpolation procedure is then used to extract an interpolation sequence. The sequence is used to over-approximate sets of reachable states at different depths. If at any point a fixpoint is reached, ISB terminates indicating the validity of the checked property. Otherwise, the process repeats with another, longer, BMC query. ISB can be viewed as a simple addition to the BMC loop that enables termination.

Unlike ITP, ISB does not require to inject the interpolants into the BMC formula, and thus the size of interpolants does not influence the ability to solve a BMC query. Even though ISB is insensitive to the size of interpolants, it does not outperform ITP on average [16].

In Chapter 4, we present the algorithm Dual Approximated Reachability
(DAR), that can be viewed as an evolution of ISB. The algorithms ITP, IC3 and ISB are all based on a froward reachability analysis. DAR adds backward reachability analysis and tightly combines it with forward analysis. By doing so, DAR can execute mostly local reachability checks that are similar in a sense to the reachability queries executed by IC3. DAR can therefore avoid unrolling of the model in most cases. Like ITP and ISB, DAR uses interpolation to compute over-approximations of sets of reachable states. But, due to the fact that it can avoid unrolling, it manages to keep interpolants smaller. In addition, since unrolling is avoided, the queries solved by the SAT-solver are simpler.

In Chapter 5, we introduce a novel technique for computing interpolants specifically suitable to model checking. Our approach uses both the proof of unsatisfiability generated by the SAT-solver and information about the underlying problem. Our method computes interpolants in Conjunctive Normal Form (CNF) that are small in size compared to interpolants computed by the traditional method [43]. We evaluate this approach in the context of ITP. We have developed an algorithm, called CNF-ITP, which is similar to ITP but uses our method for interpolant computation. In addition, it exploits the fact that interpolants are given in CNF.

In the last chapter (Chapter 6), we present the algorithm L-IC3, which provides a SAT-based lazy abstraction-refinement algorithm based on IC3/PDR. Originally introduced for software verification, lazy abstraction enables to use different abstractions at different steps of verification. To the best of our knowledge, L-IC3 is the first to use lazy abstraction for hardware verification. The local reachability checks that lie in the core of IC3 makes it a natural candidate to be used with lazy abstraction. Thus, L-IC3 is developed on top of IC3.

As was mentioned before, IC3 uses many local reachability checks that only contain one instantiation of the transition relation. L-IC3 uses the visible variable abstraction [40], and by that enables the usage of different
sets of visible variables for the different local reachability checks that are used by IC3. In contrast to the generic CEGAR framework [22], L-IC3 is tightly integrated in IC3 and uses IC3-specific features (like the locality of the reachability checks).

Integrating abstraction into IC3 enables us to not only execute more efficient SAT queries (since we use an abstract model), but also makes the process of inductive generalization more effective. This enables L-IC3 to learn stronger consequences when it proves that a given state is unreachable, and by that reduce the effort needed when searching for an inductive invariant. This helps L-IC3 to converge faster.

## Chapter 2

## Preliminaries

Temporal logic model checking [20] is an automatic approach to formally verifying that a given system satisfies a given specification. The system is often modelled by a finite state transition system and the specification is written in a temporal logic. Determining whether a model satisfies a given specification is often based on an exploration of the model's state space in a search for violations of the specification.

In this thesis we focus on hardware. As such we consider finite state transition systems defined over Boolean variables, as follows.

Definition 2.0.1. A finite transition system or a model is a triple $M=$ ( $V, I N I T, T R$ ) where $V$ is a set of boolean variables, $\operatorname{INIT}(V)$ is a formula over $V$, describing the initial states, and $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)$ is a formula over $V$ and the next-state variables $V^{\prime}=\left\{v^{\prime} \mid v \in V\right\}$, describing the transition relation.

Throughout the thesis we assume that for a given model $M$, the transition relation $T R$ is total.

The set of Boolean variables of $M$ induces a set of states $S=\{0,1\}^{|V|}$, where each state $s \in S$ is given by a valuation of the variables in $V$. A formula over $V$ (resp. $V, V^{\prime}$ ) represents the set of states (resp. pairs of states) obtained by its satisfying assignments. With abuse of notation we
will refer to a formula $\eta$ over $V$ as a set of states and therefore use the notion $s \in \eta$ for states represented by $\eta$. Similarly for a formula $\eta$ over $V, V^{\prime}$, we will sometimes write $\left(s, s^{\prime}\right) \in \eta$.

The formula $\eta\left[V \leftarrow V^{\prime}\right]$, or $\eta^{\prime}$ in short, is identical to $\eta$ except that each variable $v \in V$ is replaced with $v^{\prime}$. In the general case $V^{i}$ is used to denote the variables in $V$ after $i$ time units (thus, $V^{0} \equiv V$ ). Let $\eta$ be a formula over $V^{i}$, the formula $\eta\left[V^{i} \leftarrow V^{j}\right]$ is identical to $\eta$ except that for each variable $v \in V, v^{i}$ is replaced with $v^{j}$. Throughout the paper we denote the value false as $\perp$ and the value true as $T$. For a propositional formula $\eta$ we use $\operatorname{Vars}(\eta)$ to denote the set of all variables appearing in $\eta$. For a set of formulas $\left\{\eta_{1}, \ldots, \eta_{n}\right\} \operatorname{Vars}\left(\eta_{1}, \ldots, \eta_{n}\right)$ denotes the variables appearing in $\eta_{1}, \ldots, \eta_{n}$. That is, $\operatorname{Vars}\left(\eta_{1}, \ldots, \eta_{n}\right)=\operatorname{Vars}\left(\eta_{1}\right) \cup \ldots \cup \operatorname{Vars}\left(\eta_{n}\right)$.

A path in $M$ is a sequence of states $\pi=s_{0}, s_{1}, \ldots$ such that for all $0 \leq i \leq|\pi|, s_{i} \in S$ and $\left(s_{i}, s_{i+1}\right) \in T R$. The length of a path is denoted by $|\pi|$. If $\pi$ is infinite then $|\pi|=\infty$. If $\pi=s_{0}, s_{1}, \ldots, s_{n}$ then $|\pi|=n$. A path is an initial path when $s_{0} \in$ INIT. We sometimes refer to a prefix of a path as a path as well.

We use the following notation to describe a path in $M$ of length $j-i$ by means of propositional formula:

Formula 1. path ${ }^{i, j}=T R\left(V^{i}, V^{i+1}\right) \wedge \ldots \wedge T R\left(V^{j-1}, V^{j}\right)$
where $0 \leq i<j$.
To describe a path of length $k$ starting at the initial states, we will use: $\operatorname{INIT}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge$ path $^{0, k}$.

A formula in Linear Temporal Logic (LTL) [49, 20] is of the form $\mathbf{A} f$ where $f$ is a path formula. A model $M$ satisfies an LTL property $\mathbf{A} f$ if all infinite initial paths in $M$ satisfy $f$. If there exists an infinite initial path not satisfying $f$, this path is defined to be a counterexample.

In this thesis we consider a subset of LTL formulas of the form AG $p$, where $p$ is a propositional formula. AG $p$ is true in a model $M$ if along every initial infinite path all states satisfy the proposition $p$. In other words, all
states in $M$ that are reachable from an initial state satisfy $p$. This does not restrict the generality of the suggested methods since model checking of liveness properties can be reduced to handling safety properties [3]. Further, model checking of safety properties can be reduced to handling properties of the form AG $p$ [39].

As was mentioned before, the model checking problem is the problem of determining whether a given model satisfies a given property. For properties of the form AG $p$ this can be done by traversing the set of all states reachable from the initial states, called reachable states in short. Let $M$ be a model, Reach be the set of reachable states in $M$, and $f=$ AG $p$ be a property. If for every $s \in$ Reach, $s \models p$ then the property holds in $M$. On the other hand, if there exists a state $s \in$ Reach such that $s \models \neg p$ then there exists an initial path $\pi=s_{0}, s_{1}, \ldots, s_{n}$ such that $s_{n}=s$. The path $\pi$ is a counterexample for the property $f$.

Model checking has been successfully applied to hardware verification, and is emerging as an industrial standard tool for the verification of hardware designs. The main technical challenge in model checking, however, is the state explosion problem which occurs if the system is a composition of several components or if the system variables range over large domains.

### 2.1 Satisfiability

Many problems, including some versions of model checking, can naturally be translated into the satisfiability problem of the propositional calculus. The satisfiability problem is known to be NP-complete. Nevertheless, modern SAT-solvers, developed in recent years, can check satisfiability of formulas with several thousands of variables within a few seconds. SAT-solvers such as Grasp [55], Chaff [48], MiniSAT [29], Glucose [1], and many others, are based on sophisticated learning techniques and data structures that accelerate and increase the efficiency of the search for a satisfying assignment, if it exists.

Definition 2.1.1 (Conjunctive Normal Form). Given a set $U$ of Boolean variables, a literal $l$ is a variable $u \in U$ or its negation and a clause is a disjunction of literals. A formula $F$ in Conjunctive Normal Form (CNF) is a conjunction of clauses.

With abuse of notation, we sometimes refer to a clause as a set of literals and to a CNF formula as a set of clauses.

A SAT-solver is a complete decision procedure that given a propositional formula, determines whether the formula is satisfiable or unsatisfiable. Most SAT-solvers assume a formula in CNF. A CNF formula is satisfiable if there exists a satisfying assignment for which every clause in the set is evaluated to $T$. If the clause set is satisfiable then the SAT solver returns a satisfying assignment for it. If it is not satisfiable (unsatisfiable), meaning, it has no satisfying assignment, then modern SAT-solvers produce a resolution refutation comprising the proof of unsatisfiability [62, 30, 45]. The proof of unsatisfiability has many useful applications. We will introduce one of them in a following section.

### 2.2 Bounded Model Checking

We now describe how to exploit satisfiability for bounded model checking of properties of the form AG $p$, where $p$ is a propositional formula.

Bounded model checking (BMC) [5] is an iterative process for checking properties of a given model up to a given bound. Let $M$ be a model and $f=\mathbf{A G} p$ be the property to be verified. Given a bound $k$, BMC either finds a counterexample of length $k$ or less for $f$ in $M$, or concludes that there is no such counterexample. In order to search for a counterexample of length $k$ the following propositional formula is built:

Formula 2. $\varphi_{M}^{k}(f)=I N I T\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge \operatorname{path}^{0, k} \wedge\left(\neg p\left(V^{k}\right)\right)$
$\varphi_{M}^{k}(f)$ is then passed to a SAT-solver which searches for a satisfying

```
function \(\operatorname{BMC}(M, f, k)\)
    \(i:=0\)
    while \(i \leq k\) do
        build \(\varphi_{M}^{i}(f)\)
        result \(=S A T\left(\varphi_{M}^{i}(f)\right)\)
        if result \(==\) true then
            return cex // returning the counterexample
        end if
        \(i=i+1\)
    end while
    return No cex for bound \(k\)
end function
```

Figure 2.1: Bounded model checking
assignment. If there exists a satisfying assignment for $\varphi_{M}^{k}(f)$ then the property AG $p$ is violated, since there exists a path of $M$ of length $k$ violating the property. In order to conclude that there is no counterexample of length $k$ or less, BMC iterates all lengths from 0 up to the given bound $k$. At each iteration a SAT procedure is invoked.

When $M$ and $f$ are obvious from the context we omit them from the formula $\varphi_{M}^{k}(f)$ denoting it as $\varphi^{k}$. The BMC algorithm is described in Figure 2.1.

The main drawback of this approach is its incompleteness. It can only guarantee that there is no counterexample of size smaller or equal to $k$. It cannot guarantee that there is no counterexample of size greater than $k$.

Thus, this method is mainly suitable for refutation. Verification is obtained only if the bound $k$ exceeds the length of the longest path among all shortest paths from an initial state to some state in $M$. In practice, it is hard to compute this bound and even when known, it is often too large to handle. As mentioned before, several methods for full verification with SAT have been suggested, such as induction [54], ALL-SAT [46, 31], interpolation [43, 47, 57], and Property Directed Reachability (PDR/IC3) [8, 28, 58].

In the rest of the thesis we will focus on SAT-based verification with interpolation and PDR.

### 2.3 Interpolation

In this section we introduce two notions, interpolation [23] and interpolationsequence [38] that, when combined with BMC, can provide full program verification.

Given a pair of unsatisfiable propositional formulas $A(X, Y)$ and $B(Y, Z)$, where $X, Y$ and $Z$ are sets of Boolean variables, an interpolant $I(Y)$ is a formula that fulfills the following properties: $A(X, Y) \Rightarrow I(Y) ; I(Y) \wedge B(Y, Z)$ is unsatisfiable; and $I(Y)$ is a formula over the common variables of $A(X, Y)$ and $B(Y, Z)$ [23]. Modern SAT-solvers are capable of generating an unsatisfiability proof of an unsatisfiable formula. The proof is in the form of a resolution refutation [61, 30, 45]. It is possible to compute an interpolant from a resolution refutation of $A(X, Y) \wedge B(Y, Z) \quad[50,43]$.

Definition 2.3.1. Let $(A, B)$ be a pair of formulas such that $A \wedge B \equiv \perp$. The interpolant for $(A, B)$ is a formula $I$ such that:

- $A \Rightarrow I$.
- $I \wedge B \equiv \perp$.
- $\operatorname{Vars}(I) \subseteq \operatorname{Vars}(A) \cap \operatorname{Vars}(B)$.

The interpolant can be viewed as the part of $A$ that is sufficient to contradict $B$. Note that different proofs yield different interpolants.

A similar notion can be defined when we have a sequence of formulas whose conjunction is unsatisfiable.

Definition 2.3.2. Let $\Gamma=\left\langle A_{1}, A_{2}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ be a sequence of formulas such that $\bigwedge \Gamma \equiv \perp$. That is $\bigwedge \Gamma=A_{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge A_{n}$ is unsatisfiable. An interpolationsequence for $\Gamma$ is a sequence $\left\langle\mathcal{I}_{0}, \mathcal{I}_{1}, \ldots, \mathcal{I}_{n}\right\rangle$ such that:

1. $\mathcal{I}_{0} \equiv \top$ and $\mathcal{I}_{n} \equiv \perp$
2. For every $0 \leq j<n$ it holds that $\mathcal{I}_{j} \wedge A_{j+1} \Rightarrow \mathcal{I}_{j+1}$
3. For every $0<j<n$ it holds that $\operatorname{Vars}\left(\mathcal{I}_{j}\right) \subseteq \operatorname{Vars}\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{j}\right) \cap$ $\operatorname{Vars}\left(A_{j+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$

Computing an interpolation-sequence for a sequence of formulas is done in the following way: given a proof of unsatisfiability $\pi$, for each $\mathcal{I}_{i}, 0<i<n$, the sequence of formulas is partitioned in a different way such that $\mathcal{I}_{i}$ is the interpolant for the formulas $A(i)=\bigwedge_{j=1}^{i} A_{j}$ and $B(i)=\bigwedge_{j=i+1}^{n} A_{j}$, obtained based on $\pi$. In fact, all interpolants $\mathcal{I}_{i}$ in the sequence can be computed efficiently at once, by a single traversal of a given proof of unsatisfiability [57].

Before proving the above, we provide some resolution-related definitions. The resolution rule states that given clauses $\alpha_{1}=\beta_{1} \vee v$ and $\alpha_{2}=\beta_{2} \vee \neg v$, where $\beta_{1}$ and $\beta_{2}$ are also clauses, one can derive the clause $\alpha_{3}=\beta_{1} \vee \beta_{2}$. Application of the resolution rule is denoted by $\alpha_{3}=\alpha_{1} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{2} . v$ is called the pivot variable.

Definition 2.3.3 (Resolution Derivation). A resolution derivation of a target clause $\alpha$ from a CNF formula $G=\left\{\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{q}\right\}$ is a sequence $\pi=\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{q}, \alpha_{q+1}, \alpha_{q+2}, \ldots, \alpha_{p} \equiv \alpha\right)$, where each clause $\alpha_{i}$ for $i \leq q$ is initial and $\alpha_{i}$ for $i>q$ is derived by applying the resolution rule to $\alpha_{j}$ and $\alpha_{k}$, for some $j, k<i$.

A resolution derivation $\pi$ can naturally be conceived of as a directed acyclic graph (DAG) whose vertices correspond to all the clauses of $\pi$ and in which there is an edge from a clause $\alpha_{j}$ to a clause $\alpha_{i}$ iff $\alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{k}$ for some $k$. A clause $\beta \in \pi$ is a parent of $\alpha \in \pi$ iff there is an edge from $\beta$ to $\alpha$.

Definition 2.3.4 (Resolution Refutation). A resolution derivation $\pi$ of the empty clause $\square$ from a CNF formula $G$ is called the resolution refutation of $G$.

An interpolant can be produced out of a resolution refutation [43]. We define $\langle c \mid B\rangle=\bigvee\{l \in c \mid \operatorname{Var}(l) \in \operatorname{Vars}(B)\}$ as the projection clause achieved by removing all literals such that their variable does not appear in $B$. We can also generalize the projection to sets of variables.

Definition 2.3.5 (Partial Interpolant). Let $(A, B)$ be a pair of clause sets. Given a proof of unsatisfiability $\pi$ for $A \cup B$ and a clause $c$ in the proof $(c \in \pi)$, the partial interpolant $p(c)$ is defined as:

- if $c$ is a leaf in $\pi$, i.e. $c \in A \cup B$ :
- if $c \in A$ then $p(c)=\langle c \mid B\rangle$
- else $p(c)=\mathrm{T}$
- else, let $c_{1}, c_{2}$ be parent nodes of $c$ and let $v$ be their pivot variable, i.e.

$$
c=c_{1} \otimes^{v} c_{2}:
$$

- if $v$ is local to $A$ then $p(c)=p\left(c_{1}\right) \vee p\left(c_{2}\right)$
- else $p(c)=p\left(c_{1}\right) \wedge p\left(c_{2}\right)$

If $c$ is a clause, and $l$ is a literal that does not appear in $c$, we write $\langle l, c\rangle$ to indicate the clause that results from adding $l$ as a literal to the clause $c$.

Definition 2.3.6. Clause interpolation sequence has the form $\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right) \vdash$ $\langle c\rangle\left[\varphi_{1} \ldots, \varphi_{n-1}\right]$ where $\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ are clause sets, $c$ is a clause, and $\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{n-1}$ are formulas. It is said to be valid when $\varphi_{i} \wedge A_{i+1} \Rightarrow\left(\varphi_{i+1} \vee\left\langle c \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle\right)$.

Let us define the pair $(A(i), B(i))$ for $1 \leq i<n$ such that $A(i)=A_{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge$ $A_{i}$ and $B(i)=A_{i+1} \wedge \ldots \wedge A_{n}$. If the sequence $\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ is unsatisfiable (i.e. the conjunction of all formulas is unsatisfiable), then every such pair is unsatisfiable. More precisely, $A(i) \wedge B(i)$ is unsatisfiable for $1 \leq i<n$. Given a resolution refutation $\pi$ for the sequence $\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$, let us define $p_{i}(c)$ for $c \in \pi$ as the partial interpolant with respect to the pair $(A(i), B(i))$ (Definition 2.3.5).

Lemma 2.3.7. Let $\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ be an inconsistent sequence of formulas and let $\pi$ be a proof of unsatisfiability. For a clause $c \in \pi\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right) \vdash$ $\langle c\rangle\left[p_{1}(c), \ldots, p_{n-1}(c)\right]$ is valid.

Proof. Let $\pi$ be a resolution refutation for the sequence $\left(A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$. We prove by induction on the structure of $\pi$. The base case is where $c$ is a root clause of $\pi$, meaning, $c \in A_{1} \cup \ldots \cup A_{n}$. We therefore want to show that $p_{i}(c) \wedge A_{i+1} \Rightarrow p_{i+1}(c) \vee\left\langle c \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$. Let us assume that $c \in A_{j}$ :

- $j \leq i$ : We need to show that $\left\langle c \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle \wedge A_{i+1} \Rightarrow\left\langle c \mid A_{i+2}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle \vee$ $\left\langle c \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$, which is equivalent to $\left\langle c \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle \wedge A_{i+1} \Rightarrow\left\langle c \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$. Clearly, this holds $(\psi \wedge \eta \Rightarrow \psi)$.
- $j=i+1$ : We need to show that $\top \wedge A_{i+1} \Rightarrow\left\langle c \mid A_{i+2}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle \vee$ $\left\langle c \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$. Since $c \in A_{i+1},\left\langle c \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ is equivalent to $c$. Thus, we need to show that $A_{i+1} \Rightarrow c$. This trivially holds since $c \in$ $A_{i+1}$.
- $j>i+1$ : We need to show that $\top \wedge A_{i+1} \Rightarrow \top \vee\left\langle c \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$, which is equivalent to $A_{i+1} \Rightarrow \top$ - trivially holds.

For the induction step, let $\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle$ and $\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle$ be children of $c$ and let $v$ be the pivot variable. We therefore have the following assumptions:

- $p_{i}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \wedge A_{i+1} \Rightarrow p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \vee\left\langle v \vee c_{1} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$
- $p_{i}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right) \wedge A_{i+1} \Rightarrow p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right) \vee\left\langle\neg v \vee c_{2} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$

Considering Definition 2.3.5, if $v \in \operatorname{Vars}\left(A_{i+2}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ then $p_{j}(c)=$ $p_{j}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \wedge p_{j}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)$ for $j \in\{i, i+1\}$, otherwise if $v \in \operatorname{Vars}\left(A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ then $p_{i}(c)=p_{i}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \wedge p_{i}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)$ and $p_{i+1}(c)=p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \vee p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)$. In all other cases $p_{j}(c)=p_{j}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \vee p_{j}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)$. We consider different cases according to $v$.

- $v \in \operatorname{Vars}\left(A_{i+2}, \ldots, A_{n}\right):$ We need to show that $\left(p_{i}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \wedge p_{i}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)\right) \wedge$ $A_{i+1} \Rightarrow\left(p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \wedge p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)\right) \vee\left\langle c_{1} \vee c_{2} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$. Let us assume that the above does not hold. There is therefore an assignment such that $\left(p_{i}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \wedge p_{i}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)\right) \wedge A_{i+1}$ is evaluated to $\top$ and $\left(p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \wedge p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)\right) \vee\left\langle c_{1} \vee c_{2} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ is evaluated to $\perp$. Thus, $p_{i}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right)$ and $p_{i}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)$ are evaluated to T . By our induction hypothesis $p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \vee\left\langle v \vee c_{1} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ and $p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right) \vee\left\langle\neg v \vee c_{2} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ are evaluated to $T$. Due to our assumption, we know that $p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right)$ and $p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)$ are both $\perp$. By that, $\left\langle v \vee c_{1} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ and $\left\langle\neg v \vee c_{2} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ are T. Without loss of generality, let us assume that $v$ is evaluated to $\perp$. By that we get that $\left\langle c_{1} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots A_{n}\right\rangle$ is evaluated to T . This contradicts our assumption that $\left\langle c_{1} \vee c_{2} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ is evaluated to $\perp$.
- $v \in \operatorname{Vars}\left(A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right):$ We need to show that $\left(p_{i}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \wedge p_{i}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)\right) \wedge$ $A_{i+1} \Rightarrow\left(p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \vee p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)\right) \vee\left\langle c_{1} \vee c_{2} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$. This case is proved in a similar manner to the previous case.
- Otherwise: We need to show that $\left(p_{i}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \vee p_{i}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)\right) \wedge A_{i+1} \Rightarrow$ $\left(p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \vee p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)\right) \vee\left\langle c_{1} \vee c_{2} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$. Let us assume to the contrary, that it does not hold. This means that there exists an assignment such that $\left(p_{i}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \vee p_{i}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)\right) \wedge A_{i+1}$ is evaluated to $\top$ and $\left(p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right) \vee p_{i+1}\left(\left\langle\neg v, c_{2}\right\rangle\right)\right) \vee\left\langle c_{1} \vee c_{2} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ is evaluated to $\perp$. Without loss of generality, let us assume that $p_{i}\left(\left\langle v, c_{1}\right\rangle\right)$ is evaluated to $\top$, then by the induction hypothesis $\left\langle v \vee c_{1} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ is also evaluated to $T$. Since we assume that $\left\langle c_{1} \vee c_{2} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ is evaluated to $\perp$ (our contradictory assumption), we get that $\left\langle c_{1} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ is evaluated to $\perp$. But, since $v \notin \operatorname{Vars}\left(A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right)$ we get that $\left\langle c_{1} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle=\left\langle v \vee c_{1} \mid A_{i+1}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$. This leads to a contradiction.

Theorem 2.3.8. Let $\Gamma=\left\langle A_{1}, A_{2}, \ldots, A_{n}\right\rangle$ be a sequence of formulas such that $\wedge \Gamma \equiv \perp$ and let $\pi$ be a proof of unsatisfiability for $\wedge \Gamma$. For every $1 \leq i<n$ let us define $A(i)=A_{1} \wedge \ldots \wedge A_{i}$ and $B(i)=A_{i+1} \wedge \ldots \wedge A_{n}$. Let $\mathcal{I}_{i}$ be the interpolant for the pair $(A(i), B(i))$ extracted using $\pi$ then the sequence $\left\langle\top, \mathcal{I}_{1}, \mathcal{I}_{2}, \ldots, \mathcal{I}_{n-1}, \perp\right\rangle$ is an interpolation sequence for $\Gamma$.

Proof. The proof is immediate from Lemma 2.3.7.

### 2.4 Interpolation Based Model Checking (ITP)

In [43], interpolation has been suggested for the first time in order to obtain a SAT-based model checking algorithm for full verification. Before going into details, and in order to better understand the algorithm and the motivation behind it, we first review some basic concepts of Symbolic Model Checking (SMC).

### 2.4.1 Symbolic Model Checking

SMC performs forward reachability analysis by computing sets of reachable states $S_{j}$, where $j$ is the number of transitions needed to reach a state in $S_{j}$ when starting from an initial state. More precisely, $S_{0}(V)=I N I T(V)$ and for every $j \geq 1, S_{j+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)=\exists V\left(S_{j}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)\right)$. The computation of $S_{j+1}$ is referred to as an image operation on the set $S_{j}$. Once $S_{j}$ is computed, if it contains states violating $p$ (recall that $f=A G p$ ), a counterexample of length $j$ is found and returned. Otherwise, if for $j \geq 1 S_{j} \subseteq \bigcup_{i=0}^{j-1} S_{i}$ then a fixpoint has been reached, meaning that all reachable states have been found already. If no reachable state violates the property then the algorithm concludes that $M \models f$.

### 2.4.2 ITP Detailed

The algorithm, referred to as Interpolation Based Model Checking (ITP), combines BMC and Interpolation [23].

As we have seen, BMC alone is only sound and not complete. In order to be able to determine if $M \models f$, current SAT-based model checking algorithms are based on a computation that over-approximates the reachable states of M. We use the notion of Reachability Sequence:

Definition 2.4.1. A Forward Reachability Sequence (FRS) of length $k$ with respect to a model $M$ and a property AG $p$, denoted $\bar{F}_{[k]}(M, p)$, is a sequence $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$ of propositional formulas over $V$ such that the following holds:

- $F_{0}=I N I T$
- $F_{i} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{\prime}$ for $0 \leq i<k$
- $F_{i} \Rightarrow p$ for $0 \leq i \leq k$

A reachability sequence $\bar{F}_{[k]}$ is said to be monotonic (MFRS) when $F_{i} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}$ for $0 \leq i<k$.

Recall that the formula $F_{i+1}^{\prime}$ is equivalent to $F_{i+1}\left[V \leftarrow V^{\prime}\right]$, and that implication between formulas corresponds to inclusion between the set of states represented by the formulas. Thus, for non-monotonic reachability sequence, the set of states represented by $F_{i}$ over-approximates the states reachable from INIT in exactly $i$ steps. When $\bar{F}_{[k]}$ is monotonic $F_{i}$ represents all the states that are reachable from $I N I T$ in $i$ steps or less. We refer to $i$ as time frame (or frame) $i$. When $M, p$ and $k$ are clear from the context we omit them and write $\bar{F}$.

Definition 2.4.2 (Fixpoint). ${ }^{1}$ Let $\bar{F}$ be a FRS of length $n$. We say that $\bar{F}$ is at fixpoint if there exists $0<k \leq n$ s.t. $F_{k} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}$.

[^1]ITP uses interpolants to compute a forward reachability sequence (Definition 2.4.1). The algorithm concludes that the property holds when a fixpoint is reached during the computation of the reachable states and none of the computed states violates the property.

Informally, we will use the notion of fixpoint when we can conclude that all reachable states in the model have been visited ${ }^{2}$. Using a FRS enables us to determine wether a fixpoint has been reached or not.

Theorem 2.4.3. Let $\bar{F}$ be a $F R S$ of length $n$ for $M$ and $A G p$. If $\bar{F}$ is at fixpoint then $M \models A G p$.

Proof. Suppose $\bar{F}$ is at fixpoint, i.e., there exists $0<k \leq n$ s.t. $F_{k} \Rightarrow$ $\bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}$. Denote by $R$ the set of all states reachable from INIT (in any number of steps). Recall that $F_{i} \Rightarrow p$ for every $0 \leq i \leq n$, which ensures $\bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i} \Rightarrow p$. It therefore suffices to show that $R \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}$ in order to conclude that $R \Rightarrow p$ and thus $M \models A G p$.

We show that $R \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}$. Assume to the contrary that there exists a state in $R$ which is not in $\bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}$. Consider such a state $s$ whose distance from INIT is shortest. Let $s_{p}$ be the predecessor of $s$ along a shortest path from INIT to $s$. The distance of $s_{p}$ from INIT is shorter than the distance of $s$. Thus, since $s$ is the closest to INIT which is not in $\bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}$, it has to be that $s_{p} \in \bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}$, which means there exists some $0 \leq j \leq k-1$ s.t. $s_{p} \in F_{j}$. Since $F_{j} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{j+1}^{\prime}$ and $s$ is a successor of $s_{p}$, this implies that $s \in F_{j+1}$ where $1 \leq j+1 \leq k$. Therefore, $s \in \bigvee_{i=0}^{k} F_{i}$. Since $F_{k} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}$, we have that $\bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i} \equiv \bigvee_{i=0}^{k} F_{i}$. We conclude that $s \in \bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}$, in contradiction.

The following definition is useful in explaining the interpolation based algorithm. Recall that the verified property is of the form $f=$ AG $p$.

[^2]```
function \(\operatorname{ITP}(M, p)\)
    if \(I N I T \wedge \neg p==\) SAT then
        return cex
    end if
    \(k=1\)
    while true do
        result \(=\operatorname{ComputeReachable}(M, p, k)\)
        if result \(==\) fixpoint then
            return Valid
        else if result \(==\) cex then
            return cex
        end if
        \(k=k+1\)
    end while
end function
```

Figure 2.2: Interpolation-Based Model Checking (ITP)

Definition 2.4.4. For a set of states $X$, a natural number $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and $1 \leq j \leq N, X$ is a $S_{j}$-approximation w.r.t $N$ if the following two conditions hold: $S_{j} \subseteq X$ and there is no path of length $(N-j)$ or less violating $p$, starting from a state $s \in X$. We write $S_{j} \preceq_{N} X$ to denote that $X$ is a $S_{j}$-approximation w.r.t $N$.

Note that the formula $\varphi^{k}$ is used in BMC to represent a counterexample of length exactly $k$. This formula can be modified to represent a counterexample of length $l$ for $1 \leq l \leq k$. We denote this formula by $\varphi^{1, k}$ and write $B M C(M, f, 1, k)$ when BMC runs on $\varphi^{1, k}$.

Formula 3. $\varphi^{1, k}=I N I T\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge T R\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right) \wedge \operatorname{path}^{1, k}\left(V^{1}, \ldots, V^{k}\right) \wedge\left(\bigvee_{j=1}^{k} \neg p\left(V^{j}\right)\right)$ Consider the following partitioning for $\varphi^{1, k}$ :

- $A=I N I T\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge T R\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right)$
- $B=\bigwedge_{i=1}^{k-1} T R\left(V^{i}, V^{i+1}\right) \wedge\left(\bigvee_{j=1}^{k} \neg p\left(V^{j}\right)\right)$.

```
function ComputeReachable \((M, p, k)\)
    \(R_{0}^{k}=I N I T, J_{0}^{k}=I N I T, n=1\)
    if \(J_{0}^{k} \wedge \operatorname{path}^{0, k} \wedge\left(\neg p\left(V^{1}\right) \vee \ldots \vee \neg p\left(V^{k}\right)\right)==\) SAT then
        return cex
    end if
    repeat
        \(A=J_{n-1}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge T R\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right)\)
        \(B=\operatorname{path}^{1, k} \wedge\left(\neg p\left(V^{1}\right) \vee \ldots \vee \neg p\left(V^{k}\right)\right)\)
        \(J_{n}^{k}=\operatorname{GetInterpolant}(A, B)\)
        if \(J_{n}^{k} \Rightarrow R_{n-1}^{k}\) then
                return fixpoint
        end if
        \(R_{n}^{k}=R_{n-1}^{k} \vee J_{n}^{k}\)
        \(n=n+1\)
    until \(J_{n-1}^{k} \wedge \operatorname{path}^{0, k} \wedge\left(\neg p\left(V^{1}\right) \vee \ldots \vee \neg p\left(V^{k}\right)\right)==\operatorname{SAT}\)
end function
```

Figure 2.3: Inner loop of ITP

Clearly $\varphi^{1, k} \equiv A \wedge B$. Assume that $\varphi^{1, k}$ is unsatisfiable. By the interpolation theorem [23], there exists an interpolant $J_{1}^{k}$ which, by Definition 2.3.1, has the following properties:

- $J_{1}^{k}$ is defined over the variables of $\operatorname{Vars}(A) \cap \operatorname{Vars}(B)$, namely, $V^{1}$.
- $A \Rightarrow J_{1}^{k}$. Hence, $S_{1} \subseteq J_{1}^{k}$.
- $J_{1}^{k}\left(V^{1}\right) \wedge B$ is unsatisfiable. This means that there is no path of length $k-1$ or less, starting from $J_{1}^{k}$, which violates $p$.

By the above we get that $S_{1} \preceq_{k} J_{1}^{k}$. At this point, we get the reachability sequence $\left\langle I N I T, J_{1}^{k}\right\rangle$. We can now proceed by replacing the initial states of $M$ with the computed interpolant $J_{1}^{k}$. BMC is reinvoked with the same bound $k$ and with the modified model $M^{\prime}=\left(V, J_{1}^{k}\left[V^{1} \leftarrow V\right], T R\right)$ in which the initial states are $J_{1}^{k}$. A new interpolant $J_{2}^{k}$ is then extracted. $J_{2}^{k}$ satisfies $S_{2} \preceq_{k+1} J_{2}^{k}$. The reachability sequence is then updated and contains a new element $\left\langle\right.$ INIT, $\left.J_{1}^{k}, J_{2}^{k}\right\rangle$.

It is important to notice that $J_{1}^{k}$ now satisfies $S_{1} \preceq_{k+1} J_{1}^{k}$ since the BMC run on $M^{\prime}$ did not find a counterexample of length $k$ starting from a state in $J_{1}^{k}$. In the general case we replace $I N I T$ with $J_{i}^{k}$ and get $J_{i+1}^{k}$. By that, at the end of the $i$-th iteration, for a given bound $k$, the reachability sequence is $\left\langle I N I T, J_{1}^{k}, J_{2}^{k}, \ldots, J_{i}^{k}\right\rangle$.

Figure 2.3 presents, for a given bound $k$, the computation of an overapproximated set of reachable states. Note that after $L$ iterations of the main loop in CheckReachable we get $L$ interpolants and for every $1 \leq i \leq L$, $S_{i} \preceq_{k+L} J_{i}^{k}$. All computed states are collected in $R$. If at any iteration, the interpolant $J$ is contained in $R$, then all reachable states have been found with no violation of $f$. CheckReachable then returns "fixpoint".

On the other hand, if a counterexample is found on a modified model, then ComputeReachable $(M, f, k)$ is aborted, the reachability sequence is discarded, and ComputeReachable $(M, f, k+1)$ is initiated. CheckReachABLE now tries to construct a new reachability sequence. Recall that the counterexample has been obtained on an over-approximated set of states and therefore might not represent a real counterexample in the original model. In case a real counterexample exists, it will be found during a BMC run on the original model $M$ for a larger bound. The complete ITP algorithm appears in Figure 2.2

## Chapter 3

## Exploiting

## Interpolation-Sequence in Model Checking

In this section we present a SAT-based algorithm for full verification (sometimes also called unbounded model checking (UMC)), which combines BMC and interpolation-sequence [57]. BMC is used to search for counterexamples while the interpolation-sequence is used to produce over-approximated sets of reachable states and to check for termination.

Interpolation-sequence has been introduced and used in [38] and [44]. In [38] it is used for computing an abstract model based on predicate abstraction for software model checking. In [44] interpolation-sequence is used for software model checking and lazy abstraction and is applied to individual execution paths in the control flow graph. The method presented in this section exploits interpolation-sequence in a different manner. In particular, it is applied to the whole model for imitating symbolic model checking (SMC).

From this point and on, we will use $M$ to denote the finite state transition system and $f=\mathbf{A G} p$ for a propositional formula $p$, as the property to be verified.

### 3.1 Interpolation-Sequence Based Model Checking (ISB)

Note that, an interpolation-sequence exists for a bound $N$ only when the BMC formula $\varphi^{N}$ is unsatisfiable, i.e. when there is no counterexample of length $N$. In case a counterexample exists, BMC returns a counterexample and the interpolation-sequence is not needed.

Definition 3.1.1 (BMC-partitioning). A BMC-partitioning for $\varphi^{N}$ is the sequence $\Gamma=\left\langle A_{1}, A_{2}, \ldots, A_{N+1}\right\rangle$ of formulas such that $A_{1}=\operatorname{INIT}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge$ $T R\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right)$, for every $2 \leq i \leq N A_{i}=T R\left(V^{i-1}, V^{i}\right)$ and $A_{N+1}=\neg p\left(V^{N}\right)$. Note that $\varphi^{N}=\bigwedge_{i=1}^{N+1} A_{i}(=\bigwedge \Gamma)$.

For a bound $N$, consider a BMC formula $\varphi^{N}$ and its BMC-partitioning $\Gamma$. In case $\varphi^{N}$ is unsatisfiable, the interpolation-sequence of $\Gamma$ is denoted by $\bar{I}^{N}=\left\langle I_{0}^{N}, I_{1}^{N}, \ldots, I_{N+1}^{N}\right\rangle$. Note that $\Gamma$ contains $N+1$ elements and therefore the interpolation-sequence contains $N+2$ elements where the first element and the last one are always $\top$ and $\perp$, respectively.

Next, we intuitively explain our method. We start with $N=1$. Consider the formula $\varphi^{1}$ and its BMC-partitioning: $\left\langle A_{1}, A_{2}\right\rangle$. In case $\varphi^{1}$ is unsatisfiable, there exists an interpolation-sequence of the form $\bar{I}^{1}=\left\langle I_{0}^{1}=\mathrm{\top}, I_{1}^{1}, I_{2}^{1}=\right.$ $\perp\rangle$. By Definition 2.3.2, $\top \wedge A_{1} \Rightarrow I_{1}^{1}$ where $A_{1}=\operatorname{INIT}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge T R\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right)$. Therefore $S_{1} \subseteq I_{1}^{1}$, where $S_{1}$ is the set of states reachable from the initial states in one transition. Also, $I_{1}^{1} \wedge \neg p\left(V^{1}\right)$ is unsatisfiable, since $I_{1}^{1} \wedge A_{2} \Rightarrow \perp$, where $A_{2}=\neg p\left(V^{1}\right)$. Therefore, $I_{1}^{1} \models p$.

In the next BMC iteration, for $N=2$, consider $\varphi^{2}$ and its BMC-partitioning $\left\langle A_{1}, A_{2}, A_{3}\right\rangle$. In case $\varphi^{2}$ is unsatisfiable, we get $\bar{I}^{2}=\left\langle\top, I_{1}^{2}, I_{2}^{2}, \perp\right\rangle$. Here too, $S_{1} \subseteq I_{1}^{2}$ and the states reachable from it in one transition are a subset of $I_{2}^{2}$ since $I_{1}^{2} \wedge A_{2} \Rightarrow I_{2}^{2}$. Also, $S_{2} \subseteq I_{2}^{2}$ and $I_{2}^{2} \models p$. Let us define the sets $F_{1}=I_{1}^{1} \wedge I_{1}^{2}$ and $F_{2}=I_{2}^{2}$. These sets have the following properties, $S_{1} \subseteq F_{1}$, $S_{2} \subseteq F_{2}, F_{1} \models p$ and $F_{2} \models p$. Moreover, $F_{1}\left[V^{1} \leftarrow V\right] \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{2}\left[V^{2} \leftarrow\right.$
$\left.V^{\prime}\right]$.
In the general case if $\varphi^{N}$ is unsatisfiable then for every $1 \leq j \leq N$, $S_{j} \subseteq I_{j}^{N}$. If we now define $F_{j}=\bigwedge_{k=j}^{N} I_{j}^{k}$ then for every $1 \leq j \leq N$ we get:

- $F_{j} \models p$ since $I_{j}^{j} \models p$.
- $F_{j} \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{j+1}^{\prime}$ since $I_{j}^{k}\left(V^{j}\right) \wedge T R\left(V^{j}, V^{j+1}\right) \Rightarrow I_{j+1}^{k}\left(V^{j+1}\right)$ for every $1 \leq k \leq N$
- $S_{j} \subseteq F_{j}$ since $S_{j} \subseteq I_{j}^{k}$ for every $1 \leq k \leq N$.

As a result, the sequence $\left\langle F_{0}=I N I T, F_{1}, F_{2}, \ldots, F_{N}\right\rangle$ is a FRS (Definition 2.4.1) and can be used to determine if $M \models f$. Similarly to the sequence obtained from ITP, the sets $I_{j}$ are over-approximations of $S_{j}$ computed by SMC. Therefore, these sets can be used to imitate the forward reachability analysis of the model's state-space by means of an over-approximation. This is done in the following manner. BMC runs as usual with one extension. After checking bound $N$, if a counterexample is found, the algorithm terminates. Otherwise, the interpolation-sequence $\bar{I}^{N}$ is extracted and the sets $F_{j}$ for $1 \leq j \leq N$ are updated. If $F_{j} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=1}^{j-1} F_{i}$ for some $1 \leq j \leq N$, then we conclude that a fixpoint has been reached and all reachable states have been visited. Thus, $M \models f$. If no fixpoint is found, the bound $N$ is increased and the computation is repeated for $N+1$. We elaborate mode on fixpoint computation later.

Next, we explain why the algorithm uses $F_{j}=\bigwedge_{k=j}^{N} I_{j}^{k}$ rather than $I_{j}^{N}$ in its $N$ th iteration. Informally, the following facts are needed in order to guarantee the correctness of the algorithm. For every $1 \leq j \leq N$ we need the following:

1. $F_{j}$ should satisfy $p$.
2. $F_{j}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{j+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ for $j \neq N$.
```
function UpdateReachable \(\left(k, \bar{F}_{[k]}, \bar{I}^{k}\right)\)
    \(j=1\)
    while \((j<k)\) do
        \(F_{j}=F_{j} \wedge I_{j}^{k}\)
        \(\bar{F}_{[k]}[j]=F_{j}\)
        \(j=j+1\)
    end while
    \(\bar{F}_{[k]}[k]=I_{k}^{k}\)
end function
```

Figure 3.1: Updating the reachability sequence $\bar{F}_{[k]}$
3. $S_{j} \subseteq F_{j}$.

This means that the algorithm cannot be implemented using the extracted interpolation sequence $\bar{I}^{N}$ alone. This is because $\bar{I}^{N}$ does not satisfy condition (1): while $I_{N}^{N} \models p, I_{j}^{N}$ for $j \neq N$, does not necessarily satisfy $p$. This can be remedied by conjoining each $I_{j}^{N}$ with $I_{j}^{j}$. However, now condition (2) no longer holds. Taking $F_{j}=\bigwedge_{k=j}^{N} I_{j}^{k}$ results in a sequence with all three properties. By that, the sequence follows the properties of Definition 2.4.1.

The algorithms for updating the FRS and checking for a fixpoint are described in Figure 3.1 and Figure 3.2, respectively. The complete model checking algorithm using the method described above is given in Figure 3.3. We refer to it as Interpolation-Sequence Based Model Checking (ISB).

It is important to note that a call to UpdateReachability changes all elements of the FRS $\bar{F}_{[k]}$. Therefore, the function FixpointREached cannot count on inclusion checks done in previous iterations and needs to search for a fixpoint at every point in $\bar{F}_{[k]}$. Moreover, it is not sufficient to check for inclusion of only the last element $I_{N}$ of $\bar{F}_{[k]}$. Indeed, if there exists $j \leq N$ such that $F_{j} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=1}^{j-1} F_{i}$ then all reachable states have been found already. However, the implication $F_{N} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=1}^{N-1} F_{i}$ might not hold due to additional unreachable states in $I_{N}$. This is because for all $1 \leq j<N, F_{j+1}$ is an over-

```
function FixpointReached \(\left(\bar{F}_{[n]}\right)\)
    \(j=1\)
    while \(\left(j \leq \bar{F}_{[k]}\right.\).length \()\) do
        \(R=\bigvee_{i=0} F_{i}\)
        \(\varphi=F_{j} \wedge \neg R / /\) Negation of \(F_{j} \Rightarrow R\)
        if \((\operatorname{SAT}(\varphi)==\) false) then return true
        end if
        \(j=j+1\)
    end while
    return false
end function
```

Figure 3.2: Checking if a fixpoint has been reached
function $\operatorname{ISB}(M, f)$
$k:=0$
result $=\operatorname{BMC}(M, f, 0)$
if (result $==c e x$ ) then
return cex
end if
$\bar{F}_{[k]}=\langle I N I T\rangle \quad / /$ Reachability sequence
while (true) do
$k=k+1$
result $=\operatorname{BMC}(M, f, k)$
if (result $==$ cex) then
return cex
end if
$\bar{I}^{k}=\left\langle\top, I_{1}^{k}, \ldots, I_{k}^{k}, \perp\right\rangle$
UpdateReachable $\left(\bar{F}_{[k]}, \bar{I}^{k}\right)$
if $\left(\right.$ FixpointReached $\left(\bar{F}_{[k]}\right)==$ true $)$ then
return true
end if
end while
end function
Figure 3.3: The ISB Algorithm
approximation of the states reachable from $F_{j}$ and not the exact image (that is, $F_{j}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{j+1}\left[V \leftarrow V^{\prime}\right]$ rather than $F_{j}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \equiv$ $\left.F_{j+1}\left[V \leftarrow V^{\prime}\right]\right)$.

Theorem 3.1.2. Assume there is no path of length $N$ or less violating $f$ in $M$. If there exist $1<j \leq N$ such that $F_{j} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=1}^{j-1} F_{i}$, then $M \models f$.

Proof. By assumption, there is no path in $M$ of length $N$ or less that violates $f$. We now show that given $F_{j} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=0}^{j-1} F_{i}$ we can conclude that there is no path of any length violating $f$. Let $R=\bigvee_{i=0}^{j-1} F_{i}$. By assumption, $F_{j} \Rightarrow R$ and for every $0 \leq i<j, F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. Thus, $R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow$ $R\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ (1). Moreover, for every $1 \leq i \leq j F_{i} \Rightarrow p$. Hence, $R \Rightarrow p$ is unsatisfiable (2).

We can show by induction that all reachable states are in $R$. The base case handles an initial state. This holds trivially by the definition of $R$. Now let us assume it holds for all states reachable in $k$ steps. It should be proved for states reachable in $k+1$ steps. Let $s_{k+1}$ be a state reachable in $k+1$ steps from an initial state. Let $\pi=s_{0}, s_{1}, \ldots, s_{k}, s_{k+1}$ be an initial path to $s_{k+1}$. By the induction hypothesis $s_{k} \in R$. By the fact that $\left(s_{k}, s_{k+1}\right) \in T R$ and by (1) we can conclude that $s_{k+1} \in R$.

By that and (2), the set of reachable states satisfy $p$ which implies that $M \models f$.

Lemma 3.1.3. Suppose $M \models f$ then there exists a bound $N$ such that $\bar{F}=$ $\left\{\right.$ INIT, $\left.F_{1}, F_{2}, \ldots, F_{N}\right\}$ and there exists an index $1<j \leq N$ such that $F_{j} \Rightarrow$ $\bigvee_{i=1}^{j-1} F_{i}$.

Proof. The set of states $S$ is finite. Let us define $N=j=|S|+1 . M \models f$ hence for every $0 \leq k \leq N, \varphi^{k}$ is unsatisfiable. Thus, the interpolation-
sequence $\bar{I}^{k}$ exists for every $0 \leq k \leq N$ and by that the FRS $\bar{F}=\left\{I N I T, F_{1}, F_{2}, \ldots, F_{N}\right\}$ exists. Since $|S|<\infty$ we get $F_{j} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=1}^{j-1} F_{i}$.

Theorem 3.1.4. There exists a path $\pi$ of length $N$ such that $\pi$ violates $f$ if and only if ISB terminates and returns cex.

Proof. Assume that the minimal violating path is of length $N$. For $N-1$ there is no path in $M$ violating $f$. By Theorem 3.1.2 we get that for every $j$ such that $1 \leq j<N, F_{j} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=1}^{j-1} I_{i}$ does not hold. Therefore, the algorithm cannot terminate by returning true in the first $N-1$ iterations. When the algorithm reaches the $N$-th iteration, $B M C(M, f, N)$ will return a counterexample and the algorithm terminates. The other direction is immediate.

Theorem 3.1.5. For every model $M$ and property $f=\mathbf{A G} p$ there exists $a$ bound $N$ such that ISB terminates. Moreover,

- $M \models f$ if and only if there exists an index $0<j \leq N$ such that $F_{j} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=0}^{j-1} F_{i}$.
- There exists a path $\pi$ of length $N$ such that $\pi$ violates $f$ if and only if ISB returns cex.

Proof. The proof is immediate from Lemma 3.1.3 and Lemma 3.1.4.

### 3.2 Comparing Interpolation-Sequence Based MC to Interpolation Based MC

In the previous section we presented ISB, an algorithm, which combines BMC and interpolation-sequence [57], and in the previous chapter we described the Interpolation based algorithm (ITP) [43]. Both algorithms are based on the
use of interpolation for computing a reachability sequence. In this section we analyze the differences between the algorithms.

Both methods compute an over-approximation of the set of reachable states. However, their state traversals are different. As a result, none is better than the other in all cases. In specific cases, though, one may converge faster.

Several technical details distinguish ISB from ITP. First, the formulas from which the interpolants are extracted are different. For a given bound $N$, ISB uses the formula $\varphi^{N}$ while ITP uses $\varphi^{1, N}$.

Second, the approximated sets are computed in different manners. ISB computes the sets $F_{j}$ incrementally and refines them after each iteration of BMC, as part of the BMC loop. ITP, on the other hand, recomputes the interpolants whenever the bound is incremented (that is, whenever CHECKReachable is called with a larger bound).

Third, ISB can be viewed as an addition to the BMC loop. At each application of BMC (with a different bound), the addition includes the extraction of an interpolation-sequence and the check if a fixpoint has been reached. Indeed, after $N$ iterations of the BMC loop in ISB, there are $N$ over-approximated sets of states, $F_{1}, \ldots, F_{N}$ satisfying, for each $1 \leq j \leq N$, $S_{j} \preceq_{N} F_{j}$.

On the other hand, ITP consists of two nested loops. The outer loop increments the bounds while the inner loop computes over-approximated sets of reachable states. If the outer loop is at some bound $N>1$ and the inner loop performs $L$ iterations then there are $L$ sets of states $J_{1}^{N}, \ldots, J_{L}^{N}$, each satisfying $S_{i} \preceq_{N+L} J_{i}^{N}(1 \leq i \leq L)$. Table 3.1 summarizes the above differences.

In summary, ITP can compute, at a given bound $N$, as many sets as needed as long as no counterexample is found (not necessarily a real counterexample). On the other hand, for bound $N$, ISB can only compute $N$ sets. However, it does not need recurrent BMC calls for each bound (only

| SMC | ISB | ITP |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\left\langle S_{1}, \ldots, S_{N}\right\rangle$ | $\begin{gathered} \left\langle F_{1}, F_{2}, \ldots, F_{N}\right\rangle \\ S_{i} \preceq_{N} F_{i} \end{gathered}$ <br> After checking bounds 1 to $N$ | $\begin{gathered} \left\langle J_{1}^{1}, J_{2}^{1}, \ldots, J_{N}^{1}\right\rangle \\ S_{i} \preceq_{N} J_{i}^{1} \end{gathered}$ <br> $N$ iterations at bound 1, if possible |
| $\left\langle S_{1}, \ldots, S_{N+L}\right\rangle$ | $\begin{gathered} \left\langle F_{1}, \ldots, F_{L}, \ldots, F_{N+L}\right\rangle \\ S_{i} \preceq_{N+L} F_{i} \\ \text { After checking } \\ \text { bounds } 1 \text { to } N+L \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \left\langle J_{1}^{N}, J_{2}^{N}, \ldots, J_{L}^{N}\right\rangle \\ S_{i} \preceq{ }_{N+L} J_{i}^{N},(1 \leq i \leq L) \\ L \text { iterations at } \\ \text { bound } N, \text { if possible } \end{gathered}$ |

Table 3.1: The correlation between the interpolants computed by ISB and ITP to the sets computed by SMC
one is needed). Thus, we can conclude that in cases ITP can compute all the needed sets at a low bound it performs better than ISB. However, for examples where the needed sets can only be computed using higher bounds, ISB has an advantage. This fact is reflected in the experimental results reported in the next section.

As mentioned before, when a counterexample exists the over-approximated sets of reachable states are not needed. If a property is violated then there exists a minimal bound $N$ for which a violating path of length $N$ exists. Both algorithms have to reach this bound in order to find the counterexample. Here, ISB has a clear advantage over ITP. This is because after each BMC run on the original model, ITP executes at least one additional BMC run on a modified model. Thus, ITP invokes at least two BMC runs for each bound from 1 to $N-1$. Clearly, the second BMC run is more demanding than the inclusion check performed by ISB. In all experiments of [57], falsified properties always favored ISB.


Figure 3.4: Runtime (in seconds) of falsified properties on Intel's microarchitecture.

### 3.3 Implementation Details and Experimental Results

### 3.3.1 Implementation Details

Both the ISB and the ITP algorithms were implemented within Intel's verification system using a SAT-based model checker which is based on Intel's in-house SAT solver Eureka. The interpolants are represented by a datastructure similar to an And-Inverter Graph (AIG) and are simplified and optimized using known methods such as constant propagation and sharing of redundant expressions.

### 3.3.2 Experimental Results

The two algorithms have been checked on various models taken from two of Intel's CPU designs. The characteristics of the checked models appear


Figure 3.5: Runtime (in seconds) of verified properties on Intel's microarchitecture.

| Name | $\sharp$ Vars | $B$ | $B_{I T P}$ | $\sharp I$ | $\sharp I_{I T P}$ | $\sharp B M C$ | $\sharp$ BMC $_{I T P}$ | Time $[\mathrm{s}]$ | Time $_{I T P}[\mathrm{~s}]$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $f_{1}$ | 3406 | 16 | 15 | 136 | 80 | 16 | 80 | 970 | 5518 |
| $f_{2}$ | 1753 | 9 | 8 | 45 | 40 | 9 | 40 | 91 | 388 |
| $f_{3}$ | 1753 | 7 | 6 | 28 | 28 | 7 | 28 | 49 | 179 |
| $f_{4}$ | 1753 | 16 | 15 | 136 | 94 | 16 | 94 | 473 | 1901 |
| $f_{5}$ | 3406 | 6 | 5 | 21 | 13 | 6 | 13 | 68 | 208 |
| $f_{6}$ | 1761 | 2 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 5 | 4 |
| $f_{7}$ | 3972 | 3 | 1 | 6 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 19 | 14 |
| $f_{8}$ | 2197 | 3 | 1 | 6 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 10 | 7 |
| $f_{9}$ | 1629 | 23 | 6 | 276 | 39 | 23 | 39 | 2544 | 1340 |
| $f_{10}$ | 4894 | 5 | 1 | 15 | 3 | 5 | 3 | 635 | 101 |

Table 3.2: Verified properties and their running parameters.
Unindexed columns refer to the ISB algorithm; columns indexed with ITP refer to the ITP algorithm. $\sharp$ Vars stands for the number of state variables in the cone of influence. $B$ - bound at convergence, $\sharp I$ - number of interpolants computed, $\sharp \mathrm{BMC}$ - number of calls to the BMC algorithm, and Time $[s]$ - the runtime in seconds.
in Table 3.3. The 136 properties chosen for the experiments were all real safety properties used to verify the correctness of the designs. The cone of influence for the properties contains thousands of state variables and tens of thousands of gates and signals. The properties vary in that some are true and some are false. During all checks, a timeout of 10,000 seconds has been set. Experiments were conducted on systems with a dual core Xeon 5160 processors (Core 2 micro-architecture) running at 3.0 GHz ( 4 MB L2 cache) with 32 GB of main memory. Operating system running on the system is Linux SUSE.

Figure 3.4 and Figure 3.5 show the runtime in seconds for the two algorithms. Each point represents a property from the set of chosen properties. The X axis represents runtime for ITP while the Y axis represents the runtime using ISB. We can see that the results vary. Figure 3.4 shows the runtime for the falsified properties. Figure 3.5 shows the runtime for the verified properties. All falsified properties (total of 67) favor ISB. There are five properties that can be verified by ISB and not by ITP (due to timeout) and two properties that can be falsified using ISB while cannot be falsified using ITP. On the other hand, there are seven properties that cannot be verified by ISB but can be verified by ITP. The rest of the properties ( 57 total) are all verified by both algorithms.

A more accurate analysis of the algorithms is shown in Table 3.2 that presents running parameters (number of state variables in the cone of influence, bound at convergence, number of interpolants computed, number of calls to BMC and runtime) on various properties for both ITP and ISB. For some cases, even though ITP converges at a lower bound, and computes fewer interpolants than ISB, ISB still converges faster by means of runtime. This is due to the fact that BMC calls are computationally heavier than the extraction of the interpolants. Since ITP issues more calls to BMC than ISB in these cases, the influence on its runtime is noticeable. Through all our experiments, when convergence for ITP could be achieved only at high

| Name | $\sharp$ Latches | $\sharp$ Inputs | $\sharp$ Gates |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $M_{1}$ | 3611 | 3 | 84570 |
| $M_{2}$ | 4968 | 2079 | 133255 |
| $M_{3}$ | 12806 | 402 | 89392 |
| $M_{4}$ | 1672 | 459 | 11195 |
| $M_{5}$ | 19213 | 305 | 146717 |

Table 3.3: Models used for testing
bounds, ISB always performed better while for convergence at lower bounds, ITP performs better. This result is supported by the analysis presented in the previous section.

## Chapter 4

## Intertwined Forward-Backward Reachability Analysis Using Interpolants

The work we present in this chapter appeared in [59]. We develop a novel SAT-based verification approach which is based on interpolation. The novelty of our approach is in extracting interpolants in both forward and backward manner and exploiting them for an intertwined approximated forward and backward reachability analysis. Our approach is also mostly local and avoids unrolling of the checked model as much as possible. This results in an efficient and complete SAT-based verification algorithm.

In previous chapters we showed how ITP uses interpolation to extract an over-approximation of a set of reachable states from a proof of unsatisfiability, generated by a SAT-solver. The set of reachable states computed by the reachability analysis is used by ITP to check if a system $M$ satisfies a safety property $A G p$.

In [8] an alternative SAT-based algorithm, called IC3, is introduced. Similarly to ITP, IC3 also computes over-approximations of sets of reachable states. However, ITP unrolls the model in order to obtain more precise ap-
proximations. In many cases, this is a bottleneck of the approach. IC3, on the other hand, improves the precision of the approximations by performing many local checks that do not require unrolling. We will go into more details about IC3 in Chapter 6.

Both ITP and IC3 compute over-approximations of the sets of states obtained by a forward reachability analysis. The forward analysis starts from the initial states of $M$, and iteratively computes successors while making sure that no bad state violating $p$ is reached. Verification based on reachability can also be performed in a dual manner using a backward reachability analysis. The backward analysis starts from the states satisfying $\neg p$ and iteratively computes ancestors while making sure that no initial state is reached.

Traditionally, BDD-based verification methods [20] use both forward and backward analyses [15, 56], while SAT-based methods mainly implement the forward one. Recently, a few works considered backward analysis in the context of SAT as well (e.g. [14, 26]). Most such works use forward and backward analyses independently of each other, or use a weak combination of the two, such as replacing the role of the initial states in the backward analysis by the reachable states computed by a forward analysis.

In the work presented in this chapter, we propose an interpolation-based verification method that applies mostly local checks and avoids unrolling of the model as much as possible. Our approach combines approximated forward and backward analyses in a tight and intertwined way, and uses each of them to enhance the precision of the other. Thus, the tight combination of the two analyses replaces unrolling in enhancing the precision of the computed over-approximated sets of states.

Our work uses the observation that a single SAT check entails information both about states reachable from the initial states (via post-image operations) and about states that reach the bad-states (via pre-image operations). We exemplify this observation by examining the propositional formula $\operatorname{INIT}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge \neg p\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ where $I N I T$ and $\neg p$ describe the sets of initial
states and bad states, respectively, and $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)$ describes the transition relation. If this formula is satisfiable, then there exists a path of length one from the initial states to the bad states. If it is unsatisfiable, then all states reachable from the initial states in one transition are a subset of $p$. This fact is often used in forward reachability. We now note that the unsatisfiability of this formula can be used in backward reachability as well. This can be done by interpreting it as "all states that can reach the bad states in one transition are disjoint from the initial states".

We exploit this dual observation by extracting two different interpolants from the unsatisfiabe formula $\operatorname{INIT}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge \neg p\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. The forward interpolant (the one used in ITP) provides an over-approximation of the post-image of INIT which is disjoint from $\neg p$. The backward interpolant, computed for the same formula when it is read backward, from right to left, provides an over-approximation of the pre-image of $\neg p$ which is disjoint from INIT.

We use the above observation as a key element in traversing the state space in a dual fashion, both forward from the initial states and backwards from the bad states.

Our algorithm, Dual Approximated Reachability (DAR), computes a Forward Reachability Sequence $\bar{F}=\left\langle F_{0}, F_{1}, \ldots\right\rangle$, and a Backward Reachability Sequence $\bar{B}=\left\langle B_{0}, B_{1}, \ldots\right\rangle$. The set $F_{i}$ represents an over-approximation of the set of states which are reachable from INIT in exactly $i$ transitions. Further, $F_{i}$ is disjoint from $\neg p$. Similarly, $B_{i}$ represents an over-approximation of the set of states that can reach $\neg p$ in exactly $i$ transitions, and it is also disjoint from INIT. Thus, the existence of either $\bar{F}$ or $\bar{B}$ of length $n$ ensures that no counterexample of length $n$ exists in $M$.

The goal of DAR is to gradually strengthen (make more precise) and extend $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$, until a counterexample is found or until one of $\bar{F}$ or $\bar{B}$ reaches a fixpoint, that is, no new states are found when the sequence is further extended. To do this, DAR employs local strengthening phases, assisted by
a global strengthening phase, when needed. Only the global strengthening involves unrolling. Thus, the number of unrolling applications is limited. In addition, the depth of the unrolling is also limited.

Initially, $\bar{F}=\left\langle F_{0}\right\rangle$ and $\bar{B}=\left\langle B_{0}\right\rangle$, where $F_{0}=I N I T$ and $B_{0}=\neg p$. At iteration $n$, we define the sequence $\Pi=\left\langle I N I T, F_{1} \wedge B_{n}, F_{2} \wedge B_{n-1}, \ldots, F_{n} \wedge\right.$ $\left.B_{1}, \neg p\right\rangle$. $\Pi$ represents an over-approximation of the set of all possible paths from INIT to $\neg p$ of length $n+1$ in $M$. That is, $\Pi$ over-approximates the set of all counterexamples in $M$ of length $n+1$. DAR attempts to show that $\Pi$ represents no counterexample.

The local strengthening phase checks whether there are in fact transitions between every two consecutive sets in $\Pi$. It turns out that this can be done by applying local checks of the form $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. If such a formula is unsatisfiable, then no transition exists from $F_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}$ to its successor along $\Pi$, thus no counterexample of length $n+1$ exists. This can also be understood by observing that the unsatisfiability of $F_{i}(V) \wedge$ $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ means that the states reachable from the initial states in $i$ transitions cannot reach $B_{n-i}$ in one transition. Since $B_{n-i}$ includes all states reaching $\neg p$ in $n-i$ transitions, no counterexample of length $n+1$ exists.

In this case, the forward interpolant of $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ is used to strengthen $F_{i+1}$ while the backward interpolant strengthens $B_{n-i+1}$. Strengthening is now propagated along $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$. This reflects the fact that the components of one sequence are strengthened based on the components of the other everywhere along the sequences, making the analyses closely intertwined. Next, $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$ are extended by initializing $F_{n+1}$ to be the forward interpolant of $F_{n}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{0}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ and $B_{n+1}$ to be the backward interpolant of $F_{0}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$.

The global strengthening phase is applied when $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ is satisfiable for all $i$. This implies that a transition exists between every two consecutive sets in $\Pi$, making local reasoning insufficient. We therefore grad-
ually unroll the model $M$ and check whether the states in $F_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}$ are unreachable from INIT via $i$ transitions of $M$. Once we find such an $i$, the unrolling can stop. We are certain that no counterexample of length $n+1$ exists. We strengthen $\bar{F}$ up to depth $i$ using an interpolation-sequence [38], and return to the local strengthening phase for further strengthening and for extending $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$ to length $n+1$.

We implemented our DAR algorithm and compared it to both ITP and IC3, on real-life industrial designs as well as examples from the HWMCC'11 benchmark. In many cases, our algorithm outperformed both methods. We noticed that the number of iterations where global strengthening was needed, as well as the depth of the unrolling in the global strengthening phase is often smaller relative to the length of $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$. This reflects the fact that our use of unrolling is limited.

To summarize, the novelty of our approach is twofold. It suggests a SAT-based intertwined forward-backward reachability analysis. Further, the reachability analysis is interpolation-based. Yet, it is mostly local and avoids unrolling as much as possible.

### 4.1 Related Work

Several works use interpolation in the context of model checking. Interpolationbased model checking (ITP) was initially introduced in [43]. Similarly to ITP, DAR also uses interpolation to compute over-approximated sets of reachable states. However, ITP computes interpolants based on an unrolled formula and increases unrolling to make the over-approximation more precise. DAR, on the other hand, mostly avoids unrolling and uses backward and forward interpolants from local checks for strengthening. In addition, ITP restarts when it finds a spurious counterexample, increasing the depth of unrolling. In contrast, DAR keeps strengthening the computed over-approximations from previous iterations. In [14] improvements for ITP are suggested. They im-
plement a backward-traversal using interpolants. Unlike our method, their backward traversal is an adaptation of ITP and is not tightly integrated with the forward traversal.

The work in [26] is also based on ITP in the sense of computing interpolants based on unrolling of the model, where the depth of unrolling increases in each iteration. Their work integrates the use of forward and backward analyses: in each iteration the result of the backward analysis is used to restrict the initial states and the result of the forward analysis is used to restrict the bad states. Our approach, on the other hand, uses the result of the forward analysis to strengthen all intermediate sets of $\bar{B}$. Similarly the result of the backward analysis stregthens $\bar{F}$.

Interpolation-sequence, which extends the notion of an interpolant for a sequence of formulas has been proposed and used for model checking [38, $44,57,16]$. DAR makes a similar use of interpolation-sequence in its global strengthening phase. In contrast to the other methods, interpolation-sequence is not a key element of DAR since it is only applied occasionally. Further, it is applied to a restricted depth of unrolling.

The introduction of IC3 [8] suggested a different way to compute information about reachable states. During this process, sets of states that are similar in characteristics to interpolants are computed. Unlike interpolation-based approaches IC3 requires no unrolling and is based on inductive reasoning. The main difference between DAR and IC3 is in the way they strengthen the over-approximated sets of states. IC3 finds a state that can reach $\neg p$ and if it concludes that this state is not reachable, it tries to generalize this fact and removes more than just one state. DAR on the other hand finds an over-approximation of all states that can reach $\neg p$, rather than a single state. It then tries to prove that the entire set is unreachable. Also, when DAR fails to strengthen using local reasoning, it applies a limited unrolling in the global phase. On the other hand, IC3 can fall into state enumeration if generalization is not successful.

### 4.2 Using Interpolants for Forward and Backward Analysis

Let $Q$ be a propositional formula over $V$. The post-image of $Q$ w.r.t. $M$ is the set of all states reachable from $Q$ in one transition, defined by the formula $\exists V\left[Q(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)\right]$ (note that this formula is defined over $V^{\prime}$ ). The pre-image of $Q$ w.r.t. $M$ is the set of all states that can reach $Q$ in one transition, defined by $\exists V^{\prime}\left[T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)\right]$.

Definition 4.2.1. Let $M$ be a transition system and let $\varphi$ and $\psi$ be propositional formulas over $V$. We define the formula $\Gamma_{M}(\varphi, \psi)=\varphi(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge$ $\psi\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ to be a local reachability check w.r.t. $M, \varphi$ and $\psi$.

Whenever $M$ is clear from the context we omit $M$ and write $\Gamma(\varphi, \psi)$.

### 4.2.1 Forward and Backward Interpolants

Let $R$ and $Q$ be propositional formulas over $V$ representing sets of states, and let $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)$ be a transition relation. Suppose we would like to know if the post image of $R$, i.e., the set of states reachable from $R$ in one transition, is disjoint from $Q$. This property can be checked by checking the formula $\Gamma(R, Q)=R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ for unsatisfiability. If the formula is unsatisfiable then the answer is yes, meaning that $Q$ is not reachable from $R$ in one step. Moreover, using interpolation enables us to derive from the unsatisfiable formula an over-approximation of the post image of $R$ that is still disjoint from $Q$. Specifically, let $\varphi^{-}=R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)$ and $\varphi^{+}=$ $Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. An interpolant $I=I\left(\varphi^{-}, \varphi^{+}\right)$satisfies $R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow I\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ and $I\left(V^{\prime}\right) \wedge Q\left(V^{\prime}\right) \equiv \perp$. Therefore, $I$ represents an over approximation of the states reachable from $R$ in one transition, and it is also disjoint from $Q$.

The unsatisfiability of the formula $\Gamma(R, Q)=R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ can also be interpreted in a different manner, shedding light on the preimage of $Q$. More precisely, the unsatisfiability of the formula states that
the pre-image of $Q$, i.e., the set of all states that can reach $Q$ in one transition, is disjoint from $R$. This view leads to a different way of using interpolation in this setting. For the backward interpretation, we now define $\varphi^{-}=T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ and $\varphi^{+}=R(V)$. Again, since $\varphi^{-} \wedge \varphi^{+}$is unsatisfiable, an interpolant $I$ exists. Formally $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge Q\left(V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow I(V)$, therefore $I$ is an over-approximation of the pre-image of $Q$. Moreover, $I \wedge R$ is unsatisfiable and therefore $I$ is disjoint from $R$.

We conclude that interpolation gives us a way to approximate both postimage and pre-image computations. Formally, we define forward and backward interpolants:

Definition 4.2.2 (Forward and Backward Interpolants). Let $R$ and $Q$ be propositional formulas over $V$ s.t. $\Gamma(R, Q) \equiv \perp$. The forward interpolant of $\Gamma(R, Q)$, denoted $\mathrm{FI}(R, Q)$, is $I\left(R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right), Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)\right)\left[V^{\prime} \leftarrow V\right]$. The backward interpolant of $\Gamma(R, Q)$, denoted $\operatorname{BI}(R, Q)$, is $I\left(T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge Q\left(V^{\prime}\right), R(V)\right)$.

Note that $I\left(R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right), Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)\right)$ is defined over $V^{\prime}$. Therefore, we substitute $V$ for $V^{\prime}$ in the definition of a forward interpolant. As explained above:

Theorem 4.2.3. $F I(R, Q)$ over-approximates the post-image of $R$, and is disjoint from $Q$. Similarly, $B I(R, Q)$ over-approximates the pre-image of $Q$, and is disjoint from $R$.

Proof. By definition, $\operatorname{FI}(R, Q)=I\left(R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right), Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)\right)\left[V^{\prime} \leftarrow V\right]$. By the properties of an interpolant, $R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow I\left(R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right), Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)\right)$. Recall that $I\left(R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right), Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)\right)$ is defined over $V^{\prime}$ only. Therefore, the above implication implies that $\exists V\left[R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)\right] \Rightarrow I(R(V) \wedge$ $\left.T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right), Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)\right)$ which ensures that the interpolant over-approximates the post-image of $R$. In addition, $I\left(R(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right), Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)\right) \wedge Q\left(V^{\prime}\right) \equiv \perp$, which ensures that the interpolant is disjoint from $Q$. The proof for $\operatorname{BI}(R, Q)$ is similar.

### 4.2.2 Forward and Backward Reachability Sequences

Our model checking algorithm for safety properties, described in Section 4.3, uses forward and backward interpolants for the computation of over-approximated sets of forward and backward reachable states. Technically, we consider both forward and backward reachability approximations:

Recall the definition of a FRS (Definition 2.4.1). We now define the dual backward reachability sequence.

Definition 4.2.4. A Backward Reachability Sequence (BRS) w.r.t. $M$ and a property $A G p$ is a sequence $\bar{B}_{[n]}=\left\langle B_{0}, B_{1}, \ldots, B_{n}\right\rangle$ of sets of states s.t.

- $B_{0}=\neg p$.
- $B_{i+1}(V) \Leftarrow T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{i}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ for $0<i \leq n$.
- $B_{i} \Rightarrow \neg I N I T$ for $0 \leq i \leq n$.

We define the length of $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ and $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ to be $n$. When $n$ is clear from the context, we omit it from the notation and simply use $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$. The second condition in Definition 2.4.1 (Definition 4.2.4) states that $F_{i+1}\left(B_{i+1}\right)$ is an over-approximation of the post(pre)-image of $F_{i}\left(B_{i}\right)$ w.r.t. $M$. Iterating these properties, we conclude that $F_{i}$ over-approximates the set of states reachable from INIT in $i$ steps, and $B_{i}$ over-approximates the set of states reaching a violation of $p$ in $i$ steps. The following properties hold for FRS and BRS:

Theorem 4.2.5. A FRS of length $n$ for $M$ and AGp exists iff there is no counterexample of length $n$ or less in $M$ for AGp. Similarly for a BRS.

Proof. Consider a FRS of length $n$. Denote by $R_{i}$ the set of states reachable from INIT in exactly $i$ steps. It can be shown inductively that $R_{i} \Rightarrow F_{i}$ : Initially, $F_{0}=I N I T=R_{0}$, and for the induction step: $R_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow$ $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. Since the right-hand side is defined over
$V^{\prime}$ only, this implication implies that $R_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)=\exists V\left[R_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)\right] \Rightarrow$ $F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$.

Now suppose there exists a FRS of length $n$. For every $0 \leq i \leq n$, $R_{i} \Rightarrow F_{i} \Rightarrow p$ (the second implication is due to the third property of a FRS). This means that all states reachable from INIT in $n$ steps or less satisfy $p$. Hence no counterexample of length $n$ or less exists.

For the other direction, suppose there is no counterexample of length $n$ or less. Then a FRS of length $n$ can be defined by setting $F_{i}=R_{i}$ for every $0 \leq i \leq n$. The sequence $\left\langle R_{0}, \ldots, R_{n}\right\rangle$ satisfies all the requirement of a FRS: $R_{0}=I N I T . \quad R_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)=\exists V\left[R_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)\right]$. Therefore, $R_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \Leftarrow R_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)$. Finally, since no counterexample of length $\leq n$ exists, $R_{i} \Rightarrow p$ for every $0 \leq i \leq n$.

The proof for a BRS is similar, when replacing $R_{i}$ with the set $Q_{i}$ of states that reach $\neg p$ in exactly $i$ steps.

Next we extend the definition of a fixpoint (Definition 2.4.2) and the resulting theorem (Theorem 2.4.3) to include also the BRS:

Definition 4.2.6 (Fixpoint). Let $\bar{F}$ be a FRS and $\bar{B}$ a BRS of length $n$. We say that $\bar{F}$ is at fixpoint if there exists $0<k \leq n$ s.t. $F_{k} \Rightarrow \bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} F_{i}$. Similarly, we say that $\bar{B}$ is at fixpoint if there exists $0<k \leq n$ s.t. $B_{k} \Rightarrow$ $\bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} B_{i}$.

Theorem 4.2.7. Let $\bar{F}$ be a $F R S$ and $\bar{B}$ a BRS of length $n$ for $M$ and $A G p$. If $\bar{F}$ or $\bar{B}$ is at fixpoint then $M \models A G p$.

Proof. The proof for $\bar{F}$ is similar to the one appearing for Theorem 2.4.3.
The proof for $\bar{B}$ is similar, where instead of $R$ we use the set $Q$ of all states that can reach $\neg p$ in any number of steps.

Note that a fixpoint in one of the sequences suffices to conclude that $M \models A G p$.

### 4.3 Dual Approximated Reachability

In this section we describe our Dual Approximated Reachability (DAR) algorithm for model checking safety properties. DAR computes over-approximated sets of reachable states for both forward and backward reachability analysis by means of a FRS and a BRS, using interpolants. The computations are intertwined where each of them is used to make the other tighter. DAR avoids unrolling of the transition system unless it is really needed.

Technically, DAR computes a FRS $\bar{F}$ and a BRS $\bar{B}$ and gradually extends them until either a counterexample is found or a fixpoint is reached on either $\bar{F}$ or $\bar{B}$. Since the state-space of $M$ is finite, one of the above is bound to happen, which ensures that:

Theorem 4.3.1. Given a model $M$ and a safety property $\varphi=A G p, D A R$ always terminates. Moreover, $M \models \varphi$ if and only if DAR returns "Verified".

We defer the proof of Theorem. 4.3.1 to the end of the section. We now describe DAR in detail. The pseudocode of DAR appears in Figure 4.1.

Initialization of DAR (lines 2-5) starts by checking the formula $I N I T \wedge \neg p$. If this formula is unsatisfiable, the initial states of $M$ satisfy the property. If not, a counterexample exists. In the former case, DAR initializes $\bar{F}=\left\langle F_{0}=\right.$ $I N I T\rangle$ and $\bar{B}=\left\langle B_{0}=\neg p\right\rangle$. Clearly $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$ are FRS and BRS, respectively.

The iterative part of DAR (lines 8-13) then gradually extends and strengthens $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$ s.t. they remain a FRS and a BRS respectively. As ensured by Lemma 4.2.5, this is possible as long as no counterexample of the corresponding length exists. In the following, we describe a single iteration of DAR, strengthening and extending $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$, or reporting a counterexample.

### 4.3.1 First Iteration of DAR

Let us first present the first iteration of DAR. Recall that initially $\bar{F}=\left\langle F_{0}=\right.$ $I N I T\rangle$ and $\bar{B}=\left\langle B_{0}=\neg p\right\rangle$. DAR then checks the formula $F_{0} \wedge T R \wedge B_{0}^{\prime}=$

```
function \(\operatorname{DAR}(M, p)\)
    if \(I N I T \wedge \neg p==\) SAT then
        return cex
    end if
    \(\bar{F}=\left\langle F_{0}=I N I T\right\rangle, \bar{B}=\left\langle B_{0}=\neg p\right\rangle\)
    \(n=0\)
    while \(!\bar{F} . \operatorname{Fixpoint}() \wedge!\bar{B} . \operatorname{Fixpoint}()\) do
        if LocStrengthen \((\bar{F}, \bar{B}, n)=\) false then
                if \(\operatorname{GlbStrengthen}(\bar{F}, \bar{B}, n)==\) false then
                return cex
                end if
        end if
        \(n=n+1\)
    end while
    return Verified
end function
```

Figure 4.1: Dual Approximated Reachability

INIT $\wedge T R \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$ for satisfiability. In case this formula is satisfiable a counterexample of length one exists. Otherwise, the formula is unsatisfiable, meaning all states reachable from INIT in one transition satisfy $p$. Alternatively, all states that can reach $\neg p$ in one transition are not part of INIT. Thus, the unsatisfiability of $I N I T \wedge T R \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$ entails information both about the post-image of INIT and about the pre-image of $\neg p$.

The above gives us an intuition of how to extend both the FRS and the BRS. For the FRS we define $F_{1}=\operatorname{FI}\left(F_{0}, B_{0}\right)$. For the extension of the BRS, we define $B_{1}=\operatorname{BI}\left(F_{0}, B_{0}\right)$. Due to the properties of the interpolants, the sequences $\bar{F}=\left\langle F_{0}, F_{1}\right\rangle$ and $\bar{B}=\left\langle B_{0}, B_{1}\right\rangle$ are a FRS and a BRS respectively.

### 4.3.2 General Iteration of DAR

Let us now discuss a general iteration $n+1$. Consider the $\operatorname{FRS} \bar{F}_{[n]}=$ $\left\langle F_{0}, F_{1}, \ldots, F_{n}\right\rangle$ and the BRS $\bar{B}_{[n]}=\left\langle B_{0}, B_{1}, \ldots B_{n}\right\rangle$ obtained at iteration $n$. The goal of iteration $n+1$ is to check if a counterexample of length $n+1$
exists, and if not, extend these sequences to length $n+1$ s.t. they remain a FRS and a BRS.

The combination of $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ and $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ provides an approximate description of all possible counterexamples of length $n+1$ in $M$. Namely, recall that $F_{i}$ over-approximates the set of all states reachable from $I N I T$ in $i$ steps. Similarly, $B_{j}$ over-approximates the set of all states that can reach $\neg p$ in $j$ steps. Their intersection, $F_{i} \wedge B_{j}$ therefore over-approximates the set of all states that are both reachable from INIT in $i$ steps and can reach $\neg p$ in $j$ steps. These are states that appear in the $i$-th step of a counterexample of length $i+j$ for $A G p$ in $M$. In particular, when we align $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$ one against the other, conjoining $F_{i}$ with $B_{n-i+1}$, we obtain an over-approximation of the set of all states that appear in the $i$-th step of a counterexample of length $n+1$ for $A G p$ in $M$. The sequence

$$
\Pi\left(\bar{F}_{[n]}, \bar{B}_{[n]}\right)=\left\langle I N I T, F_{1} \wedge B_{n}, F_{2} \wedge B_{n-1}, \ldots, F_{n} \wedge B_{1}, \neg p\right\rangle
$$

therefore over-approximates the set of all counterexamples of length $n+1$ in $M$ for $A G p$.

We refer to the sequence $\Pi\left(\bar{F}_{[n]}, \bar{B}_{[n]}\right)$ as an approximated Counterexample (aCEX). Whenever clear from the context we write $\Pi$ and refer to the $i$-th element in the sequence as $\Pi_{i}$. A sequence of states $s_{0}, \ldots, s_{n+1}$ in $M$ matches $\Pi$ if for every $0 \leq i \leq n+1, s_{i} \in \Pi_{i}$. Formally, $\Pi$ has the following property.

Lemma 4.3.2. Let $\pi=s_{0}, \ldots, s_{n+1}$ be a counterexample in $M$. Then, $\pi$ matches $\Pi$.

Proof. Since $\pi$ is a path in $M$, for every $0 \leq i \leq n$, we have that $s_{i}$ is reachable in $i$ steps from INIT. Therefore, $s_{i} \in F_{i}$. In addition, since $\pi$ is a counterexample, $s_{n+1} \models \neg p$. This ensures that for every $1 \leq i \leq n+1, s_{i}$ can reach $\neg p$ in $n-i+1$ transitions. Therefore, $s_{i} \in B_{n-i+1}$. We conclude that $s_{0} \in F_{0}=\Pi_{0}, s_{n+1} \in B_{0}=\Pi_{n+1}$, and for every $1 \leq i \leq n, s_{i} \in F_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}=$ $\Pi_{i}$. Therefore $\pi$ matches $\Pi$.

By Lemma 4.3.2, checking if a counterexample exists amounts to checking if some path matches $\Pi$. Such a path is necessarily a counterexample of length $n+1$. If such a path exists, we say that $\Pi$ is valid.

DAR first attempts to check for (in)validity of the aCEX using local checks in a local strengthening phase. If this fails, DAR moves on to the global strengthening phase that applies global checks. In both phases, if the invalidity of the aCEX is established, the FRS and BRS are strengthened and extended into a FRS and a BRS of length $n+1$. Otherwise, the aCEX is found to be valid and a counterexample of length $n+1$ is obtained in the process.

### 4.3.2.1 Local Strengthening Phase

The local strengthening phase aims at checking if $\Pi$ is locally invalid, which provides a sufficient condition for its invalidity.

Theorem 4.3.3. $\Pi$ is locally invalid if there exists $0 \leq i \leq n$ s.t. $\Gamma\left(\Pi_{i}, \Pi_{i+1}\right) \equiv$ $\perp$.

Theorem 4.3.4. If $\Pi$ is locally invalid, then it is also invalid.
Proof. Suppose $\Gamma\left(\Pi_{i}, \Pi_{i+1}\right)=\Pi_{i} \wedge T R \wedge \Pi_{i+1}^{\prime} \equiv \perp$ for some $0 \leq i \leq$. Assume to the contrary that a counterexample $s_{0}, \ldots, s_{n+1}$ exists in $M$. By Lemma 4.3.2, it matches $\Pi$. In particular, $s_{i} \in \Pi_{i}$ and $s_{i+1} \in \Pi_{i+1}$. Moreover, since $s_{0}, \ldots, s_{n+1}$ is a path in $M,\left(s_{i}, s_{i+1}\right) \in T R$, which implies that $\Pi_{i} \wedge T R \wedge \Pi_{i+1}^{\prime} \not \equiv \perp$, in contradiction.

In order to check if $\Pi$ is locally invalid, we use the following observation.
Lemma 4.3.5. Let $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ be a FRS, $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ be a BRS, and $1 \leq i \leq n$. Then $\Gamma\left(F_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}, F_{i+1} \wedge B_{n-i}\right) \equiv \Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right)$. Similarly, $\Gamma\left(\right.$ INIT, $\left.F_{1} \wedge B_{n}\right) \equiv$ $\Gamma\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right)$, and $\Gamma\left(F_{n} \wedge B_{1}, \neg p\right) \equiv \Gamma\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right)$. We conclude that for every $0 \leq i \leq n, \Gamma\left(\Pi_{i}, \Pi_{i+1}\right) \equiv \perp$ iff $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right) \equiv \perp$.

Proof. We first show that $\Gamma\left(F_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}, F_{i+1} \wedge B_{n-i}\right) \equiv \Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right)$. This follows from the property of a FRS, where $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$, and the property of a BRS, where $B_{n-i+1}(V) \Leftarrow T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. Specifically, since $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$, we get that $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge$ $B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$, and as a result $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right)=F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge$ $B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \equiv F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \wedge F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ (1). Similarly, since $B_{n-i+1}(V) \Leftarrow T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$, we conclude that $B_{n-i+1}(V) \Leftarrow F_{i}(V) \wedge$ $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \wedge F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ holds as well, which means that $F_{i}(V) \wedge$ $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \wedge F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \equiv F_{i}(V) \wedge B_{n-i+1}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n-i}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \wedge$ $F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)=\Gamma\left(F_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}, F_{i+1} \wedge B_{n-i}\right)$ (2). Finally, by concatenating the sequence of equivalences in (1) and (2) we conclude that $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right) \equiv$ $\Gamma\left(F_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}, F_{i+1} \wedge B_{n-i}\right)$.

The proof for $\Gamma\left(I N I T, F_{1} \wedge B_{n}\right) \equiv \Gamma\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right)$ is similar, except that only $F_{0}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ is used. Specifically, because of the above, $F_{0}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. Therefore, $\Gamma\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right)=F_{0}(V) \wedge$ $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \equiv F_{0}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{n}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \wedge F_{1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)=\Gamma\left(F_{0}, F_{1} \wedge B_{n}\right)=$ $\Gamma\left(I N I T, F_{1} \wedge B_{n}\right)$. Dually, in the proof of $\Gamma\left(F_{n} \wedge B_{1}, \neg p\right) \equiv \Gamma\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right)$, only $B_{1}(V) \Leftarrow T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{0}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ is used.

The conclusion described in the second part of the lemma results from the fact that $\Gamma\left(\Pi_{0}, \Pi_{1}\right)=\Gamma\left(I N I T, F_{1} \wedge B_{n}\right), \Gamma\left(\Pi_{n}, \Pi_{n+1}\right)=\Gamma\left(F_{n} \wedge B_{1}, \neg p\right)$ and for every $1 \leq i \leq n, \Gamma\left(\Pi_{i}, \Pi_{i+1}\right)=\Gamma\left(F_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}, F_{i+1} \wedge B_{n-i}\right)$.

Lemma 4.3.5 implies that if there exists $0 \leq i \leq n$ s.t. $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right) \equiv$ $\perp$, then the aCEX is locally invalid and hence invalid. This can also be understood intuitively, as the above means that the (over-approximated) set of states reachable from INIT in $i$ steps and the (over-approximated) set of states that can reach $\neg p$ in $n-i$ steps are not reachable from one another in one step. This means that altogether $\neg p$ is not reachable from INIT in $i+(n-i)+1=n+1$ steps, and hence no counterexample of length $n+1$ exists.

In the local strengthening phase, DAR therefore searches for an index
$0 \leq i \leq n$ s.t. $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right) \equiv \perp$. It starts by checking the formula $\Gamma\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right)$, setting $i=n$. In case it is satisfiable, DAR starts to iteratively go backwards along $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$ decreasing $i$ by 1 . The traversal continues until either $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right)$ turns out to be unsatisfiable for some $0 \leq i \leq n$ or until $\Gamma\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right)$ is found to be satisfiable.

If an index $i$ is found s.t. $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right) \equiv \perp$, then the aCEX is locally invalid and by Lemma 4.3 .4 we conclude that no counterexample of length $n+1$ exists. Moreover, in this case, the FRS and BRS are locally and gradually strengthened and extended as follows.

Iterative Local Strengthening: Iterative local strengthening is reached when it is already known that no counterexample of length $n+1$ exists. Thus, as Lemma 4.2.5 ensures, there exist a FRS and BRS of length $n+1$. However, $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ and $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ cannot necessarily be extended immediately. For example, if $\Gamma\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right)=F_{n}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge \neg p\left(V^{\prime}\right) \not \equiv \perp$, then no $F_{n+1}$ can be obtained s.t. $\quad F_{n}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{n+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ and in addition $F_{n+1} \Rightarrow p$. On the other hand, if $\Gamma\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right) \equiv \perp$ then $F_{n+1}$ can be initialized using $\operatorname{FI}\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right)$ while maintaining the properties of a FRS (similarly to the initialization of $\left.F_{1}\right)$. Dually, if $\Gamma\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right) \not \equiv \perp$, then no extension of $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ is possible, while if $\Gamma\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right) \equiv \perp$, we can set $B_{n+1}=\operatorname{BI}\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right)$. We therefore first strengthen the components of $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ and $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ until $\Gamma\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right) \equiv \perp$ and $\Gamma\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right) \equiv \perp$, which is a necessary and sufficient condition for extending $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$.

Recall that $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right) \equiv \perp$ for some $0 \leq i \leq n$. This means that even though the components of $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ and $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ may not be precise enough to enable their extension, they are precise enough at least in one place that allowed us to conclude that no counterexample of length $n+1$ exists. DAR uses this "local" precision to strengthen the entire sequences, as described below.

In order to simplify the references to the indices, we replace the use of $i$ and $n-i$ by $0 \leq i, j \leq n$ s.t. $i+j=n$. Therefore $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right) \equiv \perp$ for some $0 \leq i, j \leq n$ s.t. $i+j=n$. This ensures that there exists a forward
interpolant $\operatorname{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$, as well as a backward interpolant $\mathrm{BI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$. We can therefore perform a local strengthening step updating $F_{i+1}$ and $B_{j+1}$ :

Definition 4.3.6. Let $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ be a FRS and $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ be a BRS s.t. $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right) \equiv \perp$ for some $0 \leq i, j \leq n$ s.t. $i+j=n$. A forward strengthening step at $(i, j)$ strengthens $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ : If $i<n, F_{i+1}=F_{i+1} \wedge \mathrm{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$. A backward strengthening step at $(i, j)$ strengthens $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ : If $j<n, B_{j+1}=B_{j+1} \wedge \operatorname{BI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$.

We refer to $i, j<n$ since $F_{n+1}$ and $B_{n+1}$ are not yet defined and therefore cannot be updated. The strengthening propagates the unsatisfiability of $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$ one step forward and one step backward:

Lemma 4.3.7. Let $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ and $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ be the result of a forward or backward strengthening step at $(i, j)$ s.t. $i+j=n$. Then

- For a forward strengthening step, if $i<n, \Gamma\left(F_{i+1}, B_{j-1}\right) \equiv \perp$.
- For a backward strengthening step, if $j<n, \Gamma\left(F_{i-1}, B_{j+1}\right) \equiv \perp$.

Proof. We first show that $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ remains a FRS. The proof for $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ is similar. Recall that $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ was updated by setting $F_{i+1}=F_{i+1} \wedge \operatorname{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$. The other components have not changed. It therefore suffices to show that after this update the following properties still hold: (1) $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow p$, (2) $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$, and $(3) F_{i+1}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+2}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. For the sake of the proof, we denote by $F_{i+1}^{o}$ the old copy of $F_{i+1}$, before the update. We therefore have that $F_{i+1}=F_{i+1}^{o} \wedge \operatorname{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$, and in particular $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{o}$.

1. $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow p$ : holds since $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{o} \Rightarrow p$.
2. $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ : holds since $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow$ $F_{i+1}^{o}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. In addition, by the properties of an interpolant, $F_{i}(V) \wedge$ $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow \operatorname{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. Conjoining the two implications, we conclude that $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{o}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \wedge \mathrm{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)\left(V^{\prime}\right)=F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$.
3. $F_{i+1}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+2}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ : holds since $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{o}$, which implies that $F_{i+1}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{o}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+2}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$.

We now consider the second part of the lemma. Consider first a forward strengthening step for $i<n$ (and accordingly $j>0$ ), where $F_{i+1}=F_{i+1} \wedge$ $\mathrm{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$. By the properties of an interpolant, we know that $\operatorname{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right) \wedge$ $B_{j} \equiv \perp$. Therefore, after the update, $F_{i+1} \wedge B_{j} \equiv \perp$. This implies that $\Gamma\left(F_{i+1}, B_{j-1}\right) \equiv \perp$ : Recall that $B_{j}(V) \Leftarrow T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{j-1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. Therefore, $\Gamma\left(F_{i+1}, B_{j-1}\right)=F_{i+1}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{j-1}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}(V) \wedge B_{j}(V)$. Since the right hand side is unsatisfiable, so is $\Gamma\left(F_{i+1}, B_{j-1}\right)$.

The proof for a backward strengthening step is similar: in this case $B_{j+1}=B_{j+1} \wedge \operatorname{BI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$. By the properties of an interpolant, we know that $\operatorname{BI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right) \wedge F_{i} \equiv \perp$. Therefore, after the update $F_{i} \wedge B_{j+1} \equiv \perp$. Again, this implies that $\Gamma\left(F_{i-1}, B_{j+1}\right) \equiv \perp$ : Recall that $F_{i-1}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow$ $F_{i}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. Therefore $\Gamma\left(F_{i-1}, B_{j+1}\right)=F_{i-1}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge B_{j+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i}(V) \wedge$ $B_{j+1}(V)$. Hence, unsatisfiability of the right hand side implies that which implies that $\Gamma\left(F_{i-1}, B_{j+1}\right)$ is also unsatisfiable.

Again, the indices are restricted since $F_{n+1}$ and $B_{n+1}$ are not yet defined. Moreover, the strengthening maintains the properties of a FRS and a BRS:

Lemma 4.3.8. Let $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ and $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ be the result of a forward or backward strengthening step at $(i, j)$ s.t. $i+j=n$. Then $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ and $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ remain a $F R S$ and a BRS resp.

Proof. We show that $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ remains a FRS. The proof for $\bar{B}_{[n]}$ is similar. Recall that $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ was updated by setting $F_{i+1}=F_{i+1} \wedge \mathrm{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$. The other components have not changed. It therefore suffices to show that after this update the following properties still hold: (1) $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow p,(2) F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow$ $F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$, and $(3) F_{i+1}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+2}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. For the sake of the proof, we denote by $F_{i+1}^{o}$ the old copy of $F_{i+1}$, before the update. We therefore have that $F_{i+1}=F_{i+1}^{o} \wedge \operatorname{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)$, and in particular $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{o}$.

1. $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow p$ : holds since $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{o} \Rightarrow p$.
2. $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ : holds since $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow$ $F_{i+1}^{o}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. In addition, by the properties of an interpolant, $F_{i}(V) \wedge$ $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow \mathrm{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. Conjoining the two implications, we conclude that $F_{i}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{o}\left(V^{\prime}\right) \wedge \mathrm{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right)\left(V^{\prime}\right)=F_{i+1}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$.
3. $F_{i+1}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+2}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ : holds since $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{o}$, which implies that $F_{i+1}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{o}(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow F_{i+2}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$.

Lemma 4.3.7 and Lemma 4.3 .8 imply that if $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right) \equiv \perp$ for some $0 \leq i, j \leq n$ s.t. $i+j=n$, then by iterating the forward and backward strengthening steps, we can eventually ensure that $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right) \equiv \perp$ for every $0 \leq i, j \leq n$ s.t. $i+j=n$, and in particular for $i=0, j=n$ and $i=$ $n, j=0$. Thus, we apply an iterative local strengthening starting from $(i, j)$, strengthening and extending $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$ :

Definition 4.3.9 (Iterative Local Strengthening). Let $0 \leq i, j \leq n$ be indices s.t. $i+j=n$ and $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right) \equiv \perp$. Iterative local strengthening from $(i, j)$ performs:

1. Forward strengthening steps starting at $(i, j)$, proceeding forward while increasing $i$ and decreasing $j$ until $(n-1,1)$ (strengthening $F_{i+1}, \ldots, F_{n}$ ), and
2. Backward strengthening steps starting at $(i, j)$, proceeding backward while increasing $j$ and decreasing $i$ until ( $1, n-1$ ) (strengthening $B_{j+1}, \ldots, B_{n}$ ), and
3. Finally, once $\Gamma\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right) \equiv \perp, F_{n+1}$ is initialized by $\operatorname{FI}\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right)$. Similarly, once $\Gamma\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right) \equiv \perp, B_{n+1}$ is initialized by $\operatorname{BI}\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right)$.

Iterative local strengthening from $(i, j)$ strengthens $F_{i+1}, \ldots, F_{n}$ and initializes $F_{n+1}$. Similarly, it strengthens $B_{j+1}, \ldots, B_{n}$ and initializes $B_{n+1}$. Lemma 4.3.7 ensures that forward and backward propagation of the strengthening steps is possible, and Lemma 4.3.8 ensures that a FRS and a BRS are obtained by strengthening.

Lemma 4.3.10. Let $0 \leq i, j \leq n$ be indices s.t. $i+j=n$ and $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{j}\right) \equiv \perp$. Iterative local strengthening from $(i, j)$ terminates with a FRS and a BRS of length $n+1$.

Proof. Termination of iterative local strengthening follows from Lemma 4.3.8 and Lemma 4.3.7 that ensure that after a local strengthening step, we still have a FRS and a BRS, and in addition, the unsatisfiability of the local reachability check is propagated one step forward or backward. This ensures that the process can continue until eventually $\Gamma\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right) \equiv \perp$, and $\Gamma\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right) \equiv \perp$, allowing to compute $F_{n+1}$ and $B_{n+1}$. Lemma 4.2.3 ensures that the initialization of $F_{n+1}$ and $B_{n+1}$ using $\operatorname{FI}\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right)$ and $\operatorname{BI}\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right)$ maintains the properties of a FRS and a BRS. This is because $F_{n} \wedge T R \Rightarrow \mathrm{FI}\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right)^{\prime}=F_{n+1}^{\prime}$ and in addition $F_{n+1} \wedge \neg p=\operatorname{FI}\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right) \wedge B_{0} \equiv \perp$. Similarly, $B_{n+1}=\mathrm{BI}\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right) \Leftarrow$ $T R \wedge B_{n}^{\prime}$ and in addition $B_{n+1} \wedge I N I T=\operatorname{BI}\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right) \wedge F_{0} \equiv \perp$.

Iterative local strengthening uses the BRS for the strengthening of the FRS and vice versa, demonstrating how each of them is used to make the other over-approximation tighter. The complete local strengthening procedure is described in Figure 4.2.

### 4.3.2.2 Global Strengthening Phase

We now consider the case where $\Gamma\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right) \not \equiv \perp$ for every $0 \leq i \leq n$ in $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ and $\bar{B}_{[n]}$. By Lemma 4.3.5, this means that there is a real transition between every pair of consecutive sets in the aCEX $\Pi$, making local strengthening inapplicable since the aCEX is not locally invalid. Clearly this does not

```
function LocStrengthen \((\bar{F}, \bar{B}, n)\)
    \(i=\operatorname{FindStrengthen}(\bar{F}, \bar{B}, n)\)
    if \(i==-1\) then
        // No local strengthening
        // point was found
        //Move to GlbStrengthen
        return false
    else
        \(\operatorname{ItERLS}(\bar{F}, \bar{B}, n, i, n-i)\)
        return true
    end if
end function
(a) Local Strengthening
    function \(\operatorname{IterLS}(\bar{F}, \bar{B}, n, i, j)\)
    while \(i<n\) do
        \(F_{i+1}=F_{i+1} \wedge \mathrm{FI}\left(F_{i}, B_{n-i}\right)\)
        \(i=i+1\)
    end while
    \(\bar{F} \cdot \operatorname{ADD}\left(\mathrm{FI}\left(F_{n}, B_{0}\right)\right)\)
    while \(j<n\) do
        \(B_{j+1}=B_{j+1} \wedge \operatorname{BI}\left(F_{n-j}, B_{j}\right)\)
        \(j=j+1\)
    end while
    \(\bar{B} \cdot \operatorname{ADD}\left(\mathrm{BI}\left(F_{0}, B_{n}\right)\right)\)
end function
```

(b) Iterative Local Strengthening

Figure 4.2: Local strengthening procedures
imply that the aCEX is valid, and further checks are needed. We therefore turn to examine the (in)validity of the aCEX in a more global manner.

Similarly to the principle used in CEGAR [19] for an abstract counterexample, here too, if the aCEX $\Pi$ is invalid, there exists a minimal index $i \leq n+1$ representing the minimal prefix of the aCEX that has no matching path in $M$.

The idea behind checking the validity of an aCEX $\Pi_{0} \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \Pi_{n+1}$ in
a global manner is therefore to search for such a minimal index where the aCEX becomes invalid, if such an index exists. In order to find a matching counterexample for $\Pi_{0} \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \Pi_{n+1}$ in $M$ or ensure that none exists, we therefore search for an index where the aCEX becomes invalid, if it exists. Since in our case the aCEX is known not to be locally invalid, we know that the prefix $\Pi_{0}, \Pi_{1}$ is necessarily valid. The search therefore starts from the prefix $X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}$ and goes forward gradually, while extending the prefix. In the $i$-th step (starting from $i=2$ ), we consider the prefix $\Pi_{0}, \ldots, \Pi_{i}$. The goal is to check if $\Pi_{0} \wedge T R \wedge \Pi_{1}^{\prime} \wedge T R \wedge \Pi_{2}^{\prime \prime} \wedge \ldots \wedge T R \wedge \Pi_{i}^{\langle i\rangle}(*)$ is satisfiable, meaning that a matching path to this prefix of the aCEX exists in $M$.

Recall that for $i \leq n,\left(^{*}\right)$ is actually the formula $I N I T \wedge T R \wedge\left(F_{1} \wedge\right.$ $\left.B_{n}\right)^{\prime} \wedge T R \wedge\left(F_{2} \wedge B_{n-1}\right)^{\prime \prime} \wedge \ldots \wedge T R \wedge\left(F_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}\right)^{\langle i\rangle}$. For $i=n+1$ the last conjunct consists of $B_{0}$ only (without an $\bar{F}$-component). In fact, since in a FRS $F_{j} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{j+1}^{\prime}$, then removing all $\bar{F}$ components except for the first (INIT) results in an equivalent formula. Similarly, since in a BRS $B_{j+1} \Leftarrow T R \wedge B_{j}^{\prime}$, removing all $\bar{B}$ components but the last ( $B_{n-i+1}$ ) again results in an equivalent formula. This simplifies the formula as follows.

Lemma 4.3.11. For every $2 \leq i \leq n+1: \Pi_{0} \wedge \operatorname{TR}\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge \Pi_{1}^{\prime} \wedge \mathrm{TR}\left(V^{\prime}, V^{\prime \prime}\right) \wedge$ $\Pi_{2}^{\prime \prime} \wedge \ldots \wedge \operatorname{TR}\left(V^{i-1}, V^{i}\right) \wedge \Pi_{i}^{\langle i\rangle}$ is equivalent to $\operatorname{INIT} \wedge \operatorname{TR}\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \wedge \ldots \wedge$ $\operatorname{TR}\left(V^{i-1}, V^{i}\right) \wedge B_{n-i+1}^{\langle i\rangle}$.

Proof. Similarly to the proof of Lemma 4.3.5, it can be shown that INIT $\wedge$ $T R \wedge\left(F_{1} \wedge B_{n}\right)^{\prime} \wedge T R \wedge\left(F_{2} \wedge B_{n-1}\right)^{\prime \prime} \wedge \ldots \wedge T R \wedge\left(F_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}\right)^{\langle i\rangle}$ is equivalent to $I N I T \wedge T R \wedge T R \wedge \ldots \wedge T R \wedge B_{n-i+1}^{\langle i\rangle}$, where the removal of the $\bar{F}$-components is due to the property $F_{j} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{j+1}^{\prime}$ of a FRS, and the removal of the $\bar{B}$-components is due to the property $B_{j+1} \Leftarrow T R \wedge B_{j}$ of a BRS. A similar equivalence holds for $i=n+1$, when the last conjunct in the formula is $B_{0}^{\langle n+1\rangle}$ (without an $\bar{F}$-component).

DAR therefore checks formulas of the form $I N I T \wedge T R \wedge \ldots \wedge T R \wedge B_{n-i+1}^{\langle i\rangle}$ starting from $i=2$. It keeps on adding transitions until either the formula
becomes unsatisfiable, or until $i=n+1$ is reached (ending with $B_{0}=\neg p$ ). If the formula is still satisfiable for $i=n+1$, a counterexample of length $n+1$ is found and DAR terminates.

If for some $2 \leq i \leq n+1, I N I T \wedge T R \wedge \ldots \wedge T R \wedge B_{n-i+1}^{\langle i\rangle}$ turns out to be unsatisfiable, making the aCEX invalid, then first $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ is strengthened:

Definition 4.3.12. Let $I N I T \wedge T R \wedge \ldots \wedge T R \wedge B_{n-i+1}^{\langle i\rangle} \equiv \perp$ for some $2 \leq i \leq$ $n+1$, and let $\left\langle I_{0}, I_{1}, \ldots, I_{i+1}\right\rangle$ be an interpolation-sequence for $\left\langle A_{1}=\operatorname{INIT} \wedge\right.$ $\left.T R, A_{2}=T R, \ldots, A_{i}=T R, A_{i+1}=B_{n-i+1}^{\langle i\rangle}\right\rangle$. A global strengthening step at index $i$ strengthens $F_{j}$ for every $1 \leq j \leq \min \{i, n\}$ by setting $F_{j}=F_{j} \wedge I_{j}$.

The condition $1 \leq j \leq \min \{i, n\}$ ensures that if $i=n+1$, strengthening is applied only up to $F_{n}$ since $F_{n+1}$ is not yet defined ${ }^{1}$. The following Lemma, along with Lemma 4.3.5 ensures that after a global strengthening step, the strengthened aCEX is locally invalid.

Lemma 4.3.13. Let $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ be the result of a global strengthening step at index $2 \leq i \leq n+1$. Then $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ remains a FRS. In addition, $\Gamma\left(F_{i-1}, B_{n-i+1}\right) \equiv \perp$.

Proof. We first show that $\bar{F}_{[n]}$ remains a FRS. Since the $F_{j}$ 's are only strengthened, the implications $F_{j} \Rightarrow p$ still hold for every $0 \leq j \leq n$. We now show that $F_{j} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{j+1}^{\prime}$ still holds as well for every $0 \leq j \leq n-1$. For $i+1 \leq j \leq n-1$ no proof is needed since $F_{j}$ and $F_{j+1}$ have not changed in this case. We now consider $0 \leq j \leq \min \{i, n-1\}$. Prior to strengthening, it was the case that (1) $F_{j} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{j+1}^{\prime}$ (a property of a FRS). In addition, for $j=0, I_{0} \wedge A_{1} \Rightarrow I_{1}$, meaning that $T \wedge I N I T \wedge T R \Rightarrow I_{1}^{\prime}$ (a property of an interpolation-sequence). Therefore $F_{0} \wedge T R=\top \wedge I N I T \wedge T R \Rightarrow I_{1}^{\prime}$. Conjoining this with (1), implies that $F_{0} \wedge T R \Rightarrow\left(F_{1} \wedge I_{1}\right)^{\prime}$. Similarly, for $0<j \leq \min \{i, n-1\}, I_{j} \wedge A_{j+1} \Rightarrow I_{j+1}^{\prime}$, meaning that $I_{j} \wedge T R \Rightarrow I_{j+1}^{\prime}$ (a property of an interpolation-sequence). Therefore, by conjoining this implication with (1) we get that for $0<j \leq \min \{i, n-1\},\left(F_{j} \wedge I_{j}\right) \wedge T R \Rightarrow$

[^3]$\left(F_{j+1} \wedge I_{j+1}\right)^{\prime} \Rightarrow F_{j+1}^{\prime}$. Therefore, the implications required by a FRS still hold after the updates of $F_{j}$ to $F_{j} \wedge I_{j}$ for $0<j \leq \min \{i, n\}$.

We now show that $\Gamma\left(F_{i-1}, B_{n-i+1}\right) \equiv \perp$. By the definition of an interpolationsequence, $I_{i} \wedge A_{i+1} \Rightarrow I_{i+1}$ where $I_{i+1} \equiv \perp$, which means that $\perp \equiv I_{i} \wedge A_{i+1}=$ $I_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1}$. In addition, $I_{i-1} \wedge A_{i} \Rightarrow I_{i}$, meaning that $I_{i-1} \wedge T R \Rightarrow I_{i}^{\prime}$. Thus, due to the strengthening of $F_{i-1}$ by conjoining it with $I_{i-1}$, we conclude that after the update $F_{i-1} \Rightarrow I_{i-1}$ and hence $F_{i-1} \wedge T R \Rightarrow I_{i-1} \wedge T R \Rightarrow I_{i}^{\prime}$. Along with the property that $I_{i} \wedge B_{n-i+1} \equiv \perp$, we conclude that $\Gamma\left(F_{i-1}, B_{n-i+1}\right)=$ $F_{i-1} \wedge T R \wedge B_{n-i+1}^{\prime} \Rightarrow I_{i}^{\prime} \wedge B_{n-i+1}^{\prime} \equiv \perp$.

DAR now uses iterative local strengthening from $(i-1, n-i+1)$ (Definition 4.3.9) to strengthen $F_{i}, \ldots, F_{n}$ and $B_{n-i+2}, \ldots, B_{n}{ }^{2}$, as well as initialize $F_{n+1}$ and $B_{n+1}$. The complete global strengthening procedure is described in Figure 4.3.

### 4.3.3 Correctness of DAR

Having described all the components of DAR, we now return to the proof of Theorem. 4.3.1, which ensures that DAR terminates with a correct answer.

Theorem. 4.3.1. We first consider iteration $n$. The iteration performs a finite number of operations (as described in the local and global strengthening phases), and hence it necessarily terminates. Moreover, it terminates successfully while extending the FRS and the BRS iff no counterexample of length $n$ exists. This can be seen since a counterexample is reported in the global strengthening phase when the formula $I N I T \wedge T R \wedge T R \wedge \ldots \wedge T R \wedge B_{0}^{\langle n\rangle}=$

[^4]```
function GlbStrengthen \((\bar{F}, \bar{B}, n)\)
    for \(i=2 \rightarrow n+1\) do \(\quad / / n=0\) does not go into the loop
        if \(I N I T \wedge T R \ldots \wedge T R \wedge B_{n-i+1}^{\langle i\rangle}==\) UNSAT then
            \(\bar{I}=\operatorname{GetInterpolationSeq}()\)
            for \(j=1 \rightarrow \min \{i, n\}\) do
                    \(F_{j}=F_{j} \wedge I_{j}\)
            end for
            \(\operatorname{IterLS}(\bar{F}, \bar{B}, n, i-1, n-i+1)\)
            return true
        end if
    end for
    return false // counterexample
end function
```

Figure 4.3: Global strengthening procedure
$I N I T \wedge T R \wedge \ldots \wedge T R \wedge \neg p^{\langle n\rangle}$ is satisfiable (see line 43 in Figure 4.3), thus a satisfying assignment to it provides a real counterexample. (An additional case happens in the first iteration, when $n=0$ and the formula $I N I T \wedge T R \wedge \neg p$ is satisfiable). In all other cases, the FRS and BRS are extended successfully by iterative local strengthening (see Lemma 4.3.10) and by Lemma 4.2.5, this ensures that no counterexample of length $n$ exists.

Thus, if a counterexample of length $n$ exists, then DAR will find it and will terminate at iteration $n$ at latest reporting a counterexample (lines 3 and 10 in Figure 4.1). It might terminate earlier if a shorter counterexample is found, but it cannot terminate with a "Verified" result, since this only happens if fixpoint is reached, in which case by Lemma 4.2.7, $M \models A G p$ in contradiction to the existence of a counterexample.

On the other hand, if $M \models A G p$, all iterations of DAR terminate successfully computing a FRS and a BRS (since there is no counterexample of any length). For every $n$, at the end of iteration $n$, if no fixpoint is reached then in particular $F_{n+1}$ includes at least one state that is not in $\bigvee_{i=0}^{n} F_{i}$. Now consider $N=2^{|V|}+1 . N$ is well-defined since $V$ is finite (as $M$ is). Since $2^{V}$
is the set of all states in $M$ and $N=2^{|V|}+1$, at iteration $N$ at latest all the states of $M$ are already in $\bigvee_{i=0}^{N} F_{i}$, and a fixpoint must be reached. In this case, DAR terminates and returns "Verified" (see line 7 in Figure 4.1).

### 4.4 Experimental Results

To implement DAR we collaborated with Jasper Design Automation ${ }^{3}$. We measured the efficiency of DAR by comparing it against two top-tier methods: ITP and IC3. We used Jasper's formal verification platform in order to implement DAR, ITP and IC3. Collaborating with Jasper allowed us to experiment with various real-life industrial designs and properties from various major semiconductor companies.

Our implementations use known optimizations for the checked methods (e.g. [14, 28]) and are comparable to other optimized implementations available online. For DAR we used some basic procedures to simplify the computed interpolants when possible. Our implementation of DAR is preliminary and can be further optimized.

For the experiments we used 37 real safety properties from real industrial hardware designs. The timeout was set to 1800 seconds and experiments were conducted on systems with Intel Xeon X5660 running at 2.8 GHz and 24 GB of main memory.

Table 4.1 shows different parameters for all three algorithms on various industrial examples. The parameters presented are: time is the runtime in seconds; depth represents the number of over-approximated sets of states computed when the algorithm converges (for ITP, the number of sets computed for the last bound used, and for DAR, the length of $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$ ); maximum unrolling is shown for ITP and DAR (IC3 does not use unrolling) and represents the maximum unrolling used during verification; and for DAR

[^5]

Figure 4.4: Y-axis represents DAR's runtime in seconds. X-axis represents runtime in seconds for the compared algorithm (IC3 or ITP). Points below the diagonal are in favor of DAR.
we present $\sharp \mathrm{GS}$ and $\mathrm{GS}_{R}$, which are the number of iterations where Global Strengthening was used and the ratio between the global strengthening to the total number of iterations. \#GS also indicates the number of iterations where local strengthening was insufficient (requiring to use global strengthening and therefore unrolling).

Examining the results shows that the use of unrolling in DAR is indeed limited and that local strengthening plays a major part during verification, with $\mathrm{GS}_{R}<0.5$ in most cases, indicating that local strengthening is often sufficient. Moreover, even when unrolling is used, its depth is usually smaller compared to the convergence depth, as indicated by maximum unrolling. Note that the maximum unrolling provides an upper bound on the unrolling, and the actual unrolling can be smaller in some global strengthening phases. For falsified properties (counterexample exists) unrolling is necessarily applied up to the length of the counterexample in the last iteration. Yet, in many cases local strengthening is still sufficient in previous iterations.

Another conclusion from the table is that a lower depth of convergence does not necessarily translate to a better runtime. We can see that in many cases, while ITP converges with less computed sets it takes more time than

DAR. This is not surprising since the number of computed sets presented for ITP considers only the sets computed in the last bound that was used, disregarding sets from previous bounds. The same can be seen with regards to IC3. While IC3 converges at a lower depth (on some cases), it still does not necessarily perform better. This is mainly due to the different effort invested by each algorithm in the strengthening and addition of a new overapproximated set.

Figure 5.11 shows a runtime comparison between DAR and IC3 (Figure 4.4a) and ITP (Figure 4.4b) on all 37 industrial examples, including those from Table 4.1. In 19 out of 37 cases, DAR outperforms ITP, and in 25 out of 37 cases it outperforms IC3. In 18 out of 37 cases DAR outperforms both methods. DAR could not solve only 5 cases, whereas ITP and IC3 failed to solve 7 and 12 cases respectively. The overall performance, when summarized, is in favor of DAR with $36 \%$ improvement in run time when compared to ITP and $52 \%$ improvement when compared to IC3.

Cases where DAR outperforms ITP can be explained by the following factors. First, DAR avoids unrolling when not needed, therefore its SAT calls are simpler. Second, DAR uses over-approximated sets computed in early iterations and strengthens them as needed, while ITP does not re-use sets that were computed for lower bounds and restarts its computation when a spurious counterexample is encountered. Cases where DAR outperforms IC3 are typically when DAR's strengthening is more efficient than IC3's inductive generalization, requiring less computation power at each iteration.

Since DAR relies heavily on interpolants, the cases where DAR performs worse than IC3 are usually those where the interpolants grow large and contain redundancies. This is also true when comparing to ITP. Since DAR computes more interpolants than ITP and also accumulates them, it is more sensitive to the size of the computed interpolants.

We also used the HWMCC'11 benchmark in our experiments. While there are a lot of cases where all methods perform the same, there are also
examples where DAR outperforms both IC3 and ITP (some are shown at the bottom of Table 4.1). The benchmark also includes examples where IC3 or ITP perform better than DAR. The majority of these cases are simple and solved in a few seconds.

| Name | \#Vars | Status | IC3 |  | ITP |  |  | DAR |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | D | Time[s] | D | MaxU | Time[s] | D | MaxU | \#GS | $\mathrm{GS}_{R}$ | Time[s] |
| $\mathrm{Ind}_{1}$ | 11854 | true | 46 | 799 | 41 | 28 | 1138 | 49 | 35 | 21 | 0.42 | 303 |
| $\mathrm{Ind}_{2}$ | 11854 | true | 44 | 701 | 41 | 28 | 1148 | 49 | 35 | 18 | 0.36 | 326 |
| $\mathrm{Ind}_{3}$ | 11866 | true | 11 | 82 | 5 | 2 | 19.1 | 11 | 8 | 4 | 0.33 | 29.9 |
| $\mathrm{Ind}_{4}$ | 11877 | true | NA | TO | 33 | 12 | 307 | 36 | 30 | 18 | 0.48 | 194 |
| Ind $_{5}$ | 11871 | false | NA | TO | NA | 20 | 88 | 19 | 20 | 10 | 0.5 | 77 |
| $\mathrm{Ind}_{6}$ | 11843 | false | NA | TO | NA | 19 | 77 | 18 | 19 | 9 | 0.47 | 70 |
| Ind $_{7}$ | 1247 | true | 6 | 1.5 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 17 | 5 | 9 | 0.5 | 56.3 |
| $\mathrm{Ind}_{8}$ | 1247 | true | 7 | 7.8 | 17 | 23 | 1250 | NA | NA | NA | NA | TO |
| Ind9 | 449 | true | 337 | 78 | NA | NA | TÖ | 45 | 12 | 22 | 0.48 | 327 |
| $\underline{I n d} d_{10}$ | 331 | true | 458 | 305 | NA | NA | TO | 26 | 11 | 15 | 0.56 | 33.9 |
| Ind 11 | 330 | true | 419 | 132 | NA | NA | TO | 38 | 12 | 19 | 0.49 | 113 |
| Ind ${ }_{12}$ | 450 | true | 22 | 32.5 | NA | NA | TO | NA | NA | NA | NA | TO |
| Ind ${ }_{13}$ | 3837 | false | NA | TO | NA | 68 | 369 | 67 | 68 | 33 | 0.48 | 305 |
| $\underline{I n d}{ }_{14}$ | 3837 | false | NA | TO | NA | 69 | 487 | 68 | 69 | 25 | 0.36 | 269 |
| Ind ${ }_{15}$ | 3836 | true | 6 | 42 | 4 | 2 | 2.3 | 70 | 64 | 32 | 0.45 | 243 |
| $\operatorname{Ind}_{16}$ | 11860 | true | 9 | 32.5 | 5 | 2 | 11.4 | 33 | 32 | 16 | 0.47 | 144 |
| Ind ${ }_{17}$ | 11878 | true | 14 | 68 | 7 | 4 | 18.4 | 11 | 8 | 4 | 0.33 | 29.5 |
| $\operatorname{Ind}_{18}$ | 3836 | true | NA | TO | 6 | 17 | 27.3 | 15 | 6 | 6 | 0.37 | 10 |
| intel007 | 1307 | true | 5 | 53.5 | NA | NA | TO | NA | NA | NA | NA | TO |
| intel018 | 491 | true | NA | TO | 57 | 35 | 695 | 78 | 51 | 33 | 0.42 | 64 |
| intel019 | 510 | true | NA | TO | 52 | 35 | 515 | 96 | 57 | 43 | 0.44 | 310 |
| intel023 | 358 | true | NA | TO | NA | NA | TO | 86 | 53 | 35 | 0.4 | 66 |
| intel026 | 492 | true | 53 | 47.1 | 50 | 35 | 21.9 | 70 | 51 | 34 | 0.48 | 27.8 |

Table 4.1: Parameters of the experiments. Name: name of the verified property; $\sharp$ Vars: number of state variables in the cone of influence; Status: true - verified property, false - indicates a counterexample; D: convergence depth representing the number of over-approximated sets of states computed when the algorithm converges (for ITP, the number of sets computed for the last bound used, and for DAR, the length of $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{B}$ ); MaxU : maximum unrolling used during verification; $\sharp G S$ : number of times Global Strengthening is used in DAR; GS $R_{R}$ : ratio between iterations using global strengthening to the total number of iterations; Time $[s]$ : time in seconds. Minimal runtime appears in boldface. Properties above the full line are from real industrial designs. Those underneath the line are from HWMCC'11.

## Chapter 5

## Efficient Generation of Small Interpolants in Conjuctive Normal Form

The work presented in this chapter appeared in [60]. This chapter describes a novel approach for interpolant computation in the context of SAT-based model checking. The main contribution of this work is the ability to produce small interpolants in Conjunctive Normal Form (CNF) efficiently. In order to compute an interpolant, our work takes advantage both of the properties of the resolution refutation, generated by the SAT solver, and of the structure of the model checking problem at hand. Another contribution of this work is the algorithm $C N F$-ITP, which is an enhanced version of the original interpolation-based model checking algorithm [43] (ITP). CNF-ITP exploits of the fact that interpolants are given in CNF.

Interpolants are used in various domains. Here, like in previous chapters, we focus on ITP. In his seminal work [43], McMillan presents a recursive procedure for interpolant generation from a proof. The procedure initially assigns a propositional formula to each one of the leaves in the resolution refutation (hypothesis clauses). It then recursively assigns a propositional
formula to every node in the refutation by either conjoining or disjoining the propositional formulas of its predecessors. Choosing between conjunction or disjunction depends on whether the pivot variable is local to $A(X, Y)$ or not. The formula that is assigned for the empty clause represents the interpolant.

While this algorithm is linear in the size of the proof, the resulting interpolant is a non-CNF propositional formula that mirrors the structure of the resolution refutation. Thus, when the resolution refutation is large, so is the interpolant. Moreover, the resulting formula is often highly redundant, meaning that the interpolant can be simplified and be represented by an equivalent smaller formula.

ITP (Section 2.4) requires the interpolants to be fed back into the SAT solver for computing the next interpolant. Therefore, in those cases where the size of interpolants is large, the resulting SAT problem may be intractable.

We strive to solve this problem by directly generating small interpolants in CNF. One way to compute an interpolant is by existential quantification. Considering the unsatisfiable formula $A(X, Y) \wedge B(Y, Z), I(Y)=$ $\exists X(A(X, Y))$ is an interpolant. For a CNF formula $A(X, Y), \exists X(A(X, Y))$ can be created by iteratively applying variable elimination ${ }^{1}$ on $X$ variables in $A(X, Y)$. The problem with this approach is that variable elimination is exponential, and, therefore impractical, given a large set of variables.

In this work, we provide a novel resolution-refutation-guided method for variable elimination in order to derive an interpolant in CNF. This procedure, while creating less clauses than naïve variable elimination procedures, might still result in an exponential blow-up.

Our solution is first to build an approximated interpolant $I_{w}(Y)$ for which $I_{w}(Y) \wedge B(Y, Z)$ may be satisfiable. We refer to such an interpolant as a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant. Computing the $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant is based on the method of resolution-refutation-guided variable elimination but is much more effi-

[^6]cient. The second stage of our method aims at strengthening $I_{w}(Y)$ and transforming it into an interpolant $I(Y)$ where $I(Y) \wedge B(Y, Z)$ is unsatisfiable. We refer to this process as $B$-Strengthing.

In order to transform a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant into an interpolant we need to make sure that $A(X, Y) \Rightarrow I_{w}(Y)$ and that $I_{w}(Y) \wedge B(Y, Z)$ is unsatisfiable. This can be done by finding all satisfying assignments $s(Y)$ to $I_{w}(Y) \wedge B(Y, Z)$ and conjoining $\neg s(Y)$ with $I_{w}(Y)$. Clearly, since $A(X, Y) \wedge B(Y, Z)$ is unsatisfiable, $A(X, Y) \Rightarrow \neg s(Y)$ for all such assignments. Note that an assignment $s$ is a conjunction of literals, and therefore its negation is a clause. By this we keep $I_{w}(Y)$ in CNF. The number of such assignments may be vast, and therefore this is an inefficient method.

To overcome this, instead of adding a clause to $I_{w}(Y)$ we generalize it to a sub-clause so as to block a larger set of assignments. In order to perform an efficient generalization we use the structure of $A$. In the context of model checking, $A\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)=Q(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)$ where $V$ is the set of variables in the checked system and $T R$ is the transition relation. Using this fact allows us to perform inductive generalization [8].

We implemented CNF-ITP, a model checking algorithm which is a variant of ITP [43], but which uses the above method to compute the interpolants. Our goal was to measure the impact of our interpolant computation method on the underlying model checking algorithm. However, CNF-ITP also exploits the fact that interpolants are given in CNF in order to improve the traditional ITP. Our improvements to ITP were inspired by [8].

For the experiments we used the HWMCC'12 benchmark set. The interpolants computed by our method, compared to those computed by the original ITP algorithm of [43], were much smaller in size in the vast majority of cases. Sometimes, the size was up to two orders of magnitude smaller. Our procedure significantly outperformed ITP and solved some test cases that ITP could not solve. To complete our experiments, we also compared CNF-ITP to the successful IC3 [8] algorithm. We found that CNF-ITP out-
performed IC3 [8] in a large number of cases.

### 5.0.1 Related Work

A well-known problem of interpolants is their size. Several works try to deal with this problem. The work in [14] suggests dealing with the increasing size of interpolants by using circuit compaction. While this process can be efficient in some cases, it may consume considerable resources for very large interpolants. Moreover, compacting an interpolant does not result in a CNF formula, whereas our approach results in interpolants in CNF.

As we have already noted, an interpolant computed from a resolution refutation mirrors its structure. Several works $[2,52]$ deal with reductions to the resolution refutation. Since our method uses resolution refutation it too can benefit from such an approach.

During interpolant computation, our approach only uses the relevant parts of the resolution refutation. The idea of holding and maintaining only the relevant parts of the resolution derivation was proposed and proved useful in [53] in the context of group-oriented minimal unsatisfiable core extraction.

Deriving interpolants in CNF was suggested in [38]. The authors suggest applying a set of reordering rules for resolution refutations so that the resulting interpolant will be in CNF. As the authors state in the paper, the described procedure does not always return an interpolant in CNF. Also, the reordering of a resolution refutation may result in an exponential blow up of the proof and, as stated in [25], reordering is not always possible. In contrast to [38], our method does not rewrite the resolution refutation generated by the SAT solver.

The work in [17] suggests an interpolant computation method that does not use the generated resolution refutation. In addition, an interpolant that results from the use of that method is in a Disjunctive Normal Form (DNF). Our work, on the other hand, uses the resolution refutation and generates interpolants in CNF efficiently.

### 5.1 Preliminaries

For a model $M$, with a slight abuse of notation, we sometimes refer to a propositional formula over $V$ as a set of states in $M$. We treat CNF formulas as sets of clauses and use a union of sets to denote a conjunction of two CNF formulas. In addition, given a sequence of clauses $\pi$, we will use $\alpha \in \pi$ to denote a clause $\alpha$ that is part of the sequence $\pi$.

Recall that for a formula $X, \operatorname{Vars}(X)$ is the set of variables appearing in $X$.

Definition 5.1.1 (Local and Global Variable). Let $(A, B)$ be a pair of formulas in CNF. A variable $v$ is $A$-local ( $B$-local) iff $v \in \operatorname{Vars}(A) \backslash \operatorname{Vars}(B)$ $(v \in \operatorname{Vars}(B) \backslash \operatorname{Vars}(A)) ; v$ is $(A, B)$-global or, simply, global, iff $v \in \operatorname{Vars}(A) \cap$ Vars(B).

We will use the notions of weaker versions of interpolants that fulfill two out of three interpolant properties (recall Definition 2.3.1).

Definition 5.1.2 ( $B_{\text {weak }}$-Interpolant). Let $(A, B)$ be a pair of formulas in CNF such that $A \wedge B \equiv \perp$. The $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant for $(A, B)$ is a formula $I$ such that:

- $A \Rightarrow I$.
- $\operatorname{Vars}(I) \subseteq \operatorname{Vars}(A) \cap \operatorname{Vars}(B)$.

Definition 5.1.3 (Non-Global-Interpolant). Let $(A, B)$ be a pair of formulas in CNF such that $A \wedge B \equiv \perp$. The non-global-interpolant for $(A, B)$ is a formula $I$ such that:

- $A \Rightarrow I$.
- $I \wedge B \equiv \perp$.

Recall that a resolution derivation $\pi$ can naturally be conceived of as a directed acyclic graph (DAG) whose vertices correspond to all the clauses of $\pi$ and in which there is an edge from a clause $\alpha_{j}$ to a clause $\alpha_{i}$ iff $\alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes \alpha_{k}$. A clause $\beta \in \pi$ is a parent of $\alpha \in \pi$ iff there is an edge from $\beta$ to $\alpha$. A clause $\beta \in \pi$ is backward reachable from $\gamma \in \pi$ if there is a path (of 0 or more edges) from $\beta$ to $\gamma$. The set of all vertices backward reachable from $\beta \in \pi$ is denoted $\Gamma(\pi, \beta)$.

For this work, we will need a definition of an $A$-resolution refutation, that is, a projection of a given resolution refutation $\pi$ to the clause set $A$ :

Definition 5.1.4 ( $A$-Resolution Refutation). Let $\pi=\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \square\right)$ be a resolution refutation of length $n$ of the CNF formula $G=A \wedge B$. The $A-$ resolution refutation $\pi_{A}$ derived from $\pi$ is defined as follows: $\pi_{A}=\pi_{A}^{n}$ where $\pi_{A}^{i}$ is defined incrementally:

$$
\pi_{A}^{i}= \begin{cases}\emptyset & i=0 \\
\pi_{A}^{i-1} \cdot \alpha_{i} & \left\{\begin{array}{l}
\alpha_{i} \in A \text { or } \\
\alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{k} \text { such that } \alpha_{j} \in \pi_{A}^{i-1} \text { or } \alpha_{k} \in \pi_{A}^{i-1}
\end{array}\right.\end{cases}
$$

In DAG terminology $\pi_{A}$ is a sub-graph of $\pi$ that contains only those vertices whose clauses belong to $A$, and the edges between such clauses. Note that a clause $\alpha \in \pi$ may have 0 or 2 parents, while a clause $\alpha \in \pi_{A}$ may also have 1 parent (if the second parent is implied only by the clauses of $B)$.

Given a clauses set $F$, we denote the set of clauses containing the literal $v$ and $\neg v$ as $F_{v}^{+}$and $F_{v}^{-}$respectively. Given a CNF formula $F$ and a variable $v \in \operatorname{Vars}(F)$, variable elimination [24] is an operation that removes $v$ from $F$ by replacing clauses containing the variable $v$ with the result of all pairwise resolution between $F_{v}^{+}$and $F_{v}^{-}$. The resulting formula $V E(F, v)$ is equisatisfiable with $F$ [24]. The DP algorithm for deciding propositional satisfiability [24] uses variable elimination until either the empty clauseis
derived, in which case the formula is unsatisfiable, or all the variables appear in one polarity only, in which case the formula is satisfiable. It is well known that the original DP algorithm suffers from exponential blow-up.

A bounded version of variable elimination has been an essential contributor to the efficiency of modern SAT preprocessing algorithms (that is, algorithms that truncate the size of the CNF formula before embarking on the search) since the introduction of the SatELite preprocesor [27]. In bounded variable elimination, used in SatELite, a variable $v$ is eliminated iff the operation does not increase the number of clauses.

### 5.2 Generating Interpolant Approximation in CNF

In this section we propose a method for generating a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant (recall Definition 5.1.2) in CNF. First, we describe two algorithms for generating interpolants in CNF. In practice, both algorithms are not applicable to all cases, because of exponential blow-up. Thereafter we introduce an efficient algorithm which is guaranteed to return a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant in CNF, and which may for some cases return an interpolant in CNF.

We start with the following lemma which follows directly from resolution derivation properties. This lemma serves as the basis for our first algorithm.

Lemma 5.2.1. Let $\pi_{A}$ be an $A$-resolution refutation. Let $P\left(\alpha_{i}\right)$ for $\alpha_{i} \in$ $\pi_{A} \backslash A$ ) be the set of (1 or 2) parents of $\alpha_{i}$. Then, $P\left(\alpha_{i}\right) \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha_{i}$

Our first algorithm for generating an interpolant in CNF is based on naïve variable elimination. First it generates a resolution refutation of the given formula using a SAT solver. Then it initializes the interpolant by those clauses of $A$ that are backward reachable from $\square$ (the empty clause). Note that at this stage $I$ is a non-global-interpolant since it contains $A$-local variables (recall Definition 5.1.3). Finally, the algorithm gradually turns the non-global-


Figure 5.1: An example of a resolution refutation. Assume $A=\left\{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{4}\right\}$ and $B=\left\{\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{3}\right\}$.

```
function \(\operatorname{ILVE}(A, B)\)
    Generate a resolution refutation \(\pi\) using a SAT solver
    \(I_{0}:=A \cap \Gamma(\pi, \square)\)
    \(i:=0\)
    for all \(v \in \operatorname{Vars}(I) \cap \operatorname{Vars}(A)\) do
            \(I_{i+1}:=V E\left(I_{i}, v\right)\)
        \(i:=i+1\)
    end for
    return \(I_{i}\)
end function
```

Figure 5.2: Interpolant by $A$-Local Variables Elimination
interpolant into an interpolant by applying variable elimination over all $A$ local variables. Consider the example in Figure 5.1. Our algorithm would generate the following interpolant: $I=\left\{\left(g_{1} \vee g_{2}\right),\left(g_{1} \vee g_{4}\right),\left(g_{3} \vee g_{2}\right),\left(g_{3} \vee g_{4}\right)\right\}$. Unfortunately, the algorithm suffers from the same drawback as the DP algorithm [24]: exponential blow-up when variables keep being eliminated. The complete algorithm is presented in Figure 5.2

We show that Algorithm ILVE is correct.
Lemma 5.2.2. Algorithm ILVE returns an interpolant.
Proof. We will show that all the three interpolant properties hold for $I$ :

1. $A \Rightarrow I$ holds, since all the clauses of $I$ are generated by resolution over $A$ clauses.
2. $I \wedge B \equiv \perp$. We prove the statement by induction on the number of iterations in the loop. For the first iteration it holds that $I_{0}=(A \cap$ $\Gamma(\pi, \square)) \wedge B \equiv \perp$, since the structure of $\pi$ implies that $\square$ is reachable from $(A \cap \Gamma(\pi, \square)) \wedge B(A \cap \Gamma(\pi, \square)$ are the leaves in $\pi$ that belong to $A$, and $A \wedge B \equiv \perp$ ). Consider iteration $i+1$. By induction hypothesis it holds that $I_{i} \wedge B \equiv \perp$. By correctness of variable elimination [24], we have $V E\left(I_{i} \wedge B, v\right) \equiv \perp$. Note that $v \notin \operatorname{Vars}(B)$, since $v$ is $A$-local by construction, hence $V E\left(I_{i} \wedge B, v\right) \equiv V E\left(I_{i}, v\right) \wedge B \equiv \perp$, which proves our property, since $I_{i+1}$ is exactly $V E\left(I_{i}, v\right)$.
3. Vars $(I) \subseteq \operatorname{Vars}(A) \cap \operatorname{Vars}(B)$ holds, since all the $A$-local variables are eliminated from $I_{0}$.

Recall that Algorithm 5.2 suffers from the same drawback as the DP algorithm [24]: exponential blow-up when variables are eliminated. We therefore move on to introduce our second attempt.

Our next algorithm is based on the observation that to eliminate a variable $v$ from $F$, it is not necessary to apply resolution over all the pairs in $F_{v}^{+}$and $F_{v}^{-}$, but rather only over those subsets that contribute to deriving a common ancestor in the resolution derivation. We need to introduce the notion of clause-interpolant.

Definition 5.2.3 (Clause-Interpolant). Let $(A, B)$ be an unsatisfiable pair of CNF formulas. Let $\alpha$ be a clause. Then, $I(\alpha)$ is a Clause-Interpolant of $\alpha$ iff:

- $A \Rightarrow I(\alpha)$
- $I(\alpha) \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha$
- $\operatorname{Vars}(I(\alpha)) \subseteq(\operatorname{Vars}(A) \cap \operatorname{Vars}(B)) \cup(\operatorname{Vars}(A) \cap \operatorname{Vars}(\alpha))$

A clause-interpolant is a generalization of an interpolant that allows one to associate an interpolant with every clause $\alpha$ in $A$-resolution refutation (recall Definition 5.1.4). As in the case of the standard interpolant, the clauseinterpolant is implied by $A$. The conjunction of the clause-interpolant with $B$ implies the clause $\alpha$ (instead of $\square$ for the standard interpolant). Finally, the clause-interpolant is allowed to contain in addition to global variables also $A$-local variables that appear in $\alpha$. Note that a clause-interpolant of $\square$ is an interpolant.

Lemma 5.2.4. A clause-interpolant of the empty clause $\square$ is an interpolant.
Proof. Each of the three conditions in the definition of a clause-interpolant yields the corresponding condition in the definition of the interpolant.

The second algorithm for deriving an interpolant in CNF works as follows: it traverses the $A$-resolution refutation from the input clauses towards $\square$. It constructs a clause-interpolant for each traversed clause as follows. The clause-interpolant of each initial clause $\alpha$ is set to $\{\alpha\}$. For creating the clause-interpolant of a derived clause $\alpha$, the algorithm first conjoins the clause-interpolants of $\alpha$ 's parents. Then, if $\alpha$ was created by resolution over a local variable $v, v$ is eliminated from the result by applying variable elimination (Figure 5.3, line 12). The clause-interpolant of $\square$ is returned as the interpolant. Consider again the example in Figure 5.1. We have $I\left(\alpha_{5}\right)=\alpha_{1} \otimes^{a_{1}} \alpha_{2}=g_{1} \vee g_{2} ; I\left(\alpha_{6}\right)=\alpha_{3} \otimes^{a_{1}} \alpha_{2}=g_{3} \vee g_{4} ; I\left(\alpha_{7}\right)=I\left(\alpha_{5}\right) ;$ $I\left(\alpha_{9}\right)=I\left(\alpha_{8}\right)=I\left(\alpha_{6}\right)$. Finally, the interpolant is $I(\square)=I\left(\alpha_{7}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{9}\right)=$ $\left\{g_{1} \vee g_{2}, g_{3} \vee g_{4}\right\}$. Note that for our example, the interpolant generated by the current algorithm is smaller than the one generated by our previous algorithm, which applies exhaustive variable elimination. In practice, however, the current algorithm is not always scalable either, due to the same problem - exponential blow-up caused by variable elimination. Also note that for our simple example the intepolant comprises a cut $\left\{\alpha_{5}, \alpha_{6}\right\}$ in the $A$-resolution refutation, where all the clauses are implied by $A$ only. One can show that

```
function \(\operatorname{IGCI}\left(\pi_{A}=\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{q}, \alpha_{q+1}, \alpha_{q+2}, \ldots, \alpha_{p} \equiv \square\right)\right)\)
    for all \(i \in\{1,2, \ldots, q\}\) do
        \(I\left(\alpha_{i}\right):=\left\{\alpha_{i}\right\}\)
    end for
    for all \(i \in\{q+1, q+2, \ldots, p \equiv \square\}\) do
        if \(\alpha_{i}\) has exactly one parent \(\beta\) then
                \(I\left(\alpha_{i}\right):=I(\beta)\)
        else
            if \(\alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{k}\), where \(v\) is global then
                    \(I\left(\alpha_{i}\right):=I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{k}\right)\)
                else \(\quad / / \alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{k}\), where \(v\) is \(A\)-local
                    \(I\left(\alpha_{i}\right):=V E\left(I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{k}\right), v\right)\)
                end if
        end if
    end for
    return \(I(\square)\)
end function
```

Figure 5.3: Interpolant Generation with Clause-Interpolants
whenever such a cut exists it comprises an interpolant. Unfortunately, in the general case such cuts do not usually exist. The complete algorithm appears in Figure 5.3.

We prove the algorithm's correctness starting with a straightforward lemma.

Lemma 5.2.5. Let $P_{1}$ and $P_{2}$ be formulas in propositional logic. Then, $P_{1} \Rightarrow P_{2}$ if and only if $P_{1} \wedge \neg P_{2} \equiv \perp$.

We need to prove additional two lemmas.
Lemma 5.2.6. Let $I$ and $B$ be formulas in $C N F, \alpha$ be a clause, and $v$ be $a$ variable, such that:

1. $I \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha$
2. $v \notin \operatorname{Vars}(B \cup \alpha)$

Then, $V E(I, v) \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha$.
Proof. By applying Lemma 5.2 .5 over the lemma's first condition $I \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha$ we have $I \wedge B \wedge \neg \alpha \equiv \perp$. By variable elimination properties [24] we have $V E(I \wedge B \wedge \neg \alpha, v) \equiv \perp$. The latter statement and the lemma's second condition $v \notin \operatorname{Vars}(B \cup \alpha)$ imply $V E(I \wedge B \wedge \neg \alpha, v) \equiv V E(I, v) \wedge B \wedge \neg \alpha \equiv \perp$. Finally, by again applying Lemma 5.2 .5 we have $V E(I, v) \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha$.

Lemma 5.2.7. Let $\pi$ be a resolution refutation and let $\pi_{A}$ be the $A$-resolution input sequence for IGCI. Then, for every $I\left(\alpha_{i}\right)$ computed by $\operatorname{IGCI}, I\left(\alpha_{i}\right)$ is a clause interpolant.

Proof. The proof is by induction on the number of iterations of both loops.
For every clause $\alpha \in A, I(\alpha)=\{\alpha\}$. Clearly, $I(\alpha)$ meets the three requirements of clause-interpolant (Definition 5.2.3)

We omit the proofs for cases where a derived clause $\alpha_{i}$ has only one parent $\beta$, and where $\alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{k}$, where $v$ is global, since they are straightforward.

Consider the case where $\alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{k}$, where $v$ is $A$-local. By induction hypothesis we have $A \Rightarrow I\left(\alpha_{j}\right)$ and $A \Rightarrow I\left(\alpha_{k}\right)$, hence $A \Rightarrow I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{k}\right)$. All the clauses created by variable elimination $\operatorname{VE}\left(I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{k}\right), v\right)$ are derived from $I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{k}\right)$ using resolution, hence we have $A \Rightarrow V E\left(I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{k}\right), v\right)$ and the first requirement is met.

By induction hyphotheses we have $I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha_{j}$ and $I\left(\alpha_{k}\right) \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha_{k}$. By Lemma 5.2 .1 we have $\alpha_{j} \wedge \alpha_{k} \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha_{i}$. Hence, $I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \wedge I\left(\alpha_{k}\right) \wedge B \Rightarrow$ $\alpha_{j} \wedge \alpha_{k} \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha_{i}$. Note that $v \notin B$, since $v$ is $A$-local and $v \notin \alpha_{i}$, since $\alpha_{i}$ was created by resolution over $v$. Hence, by Lemma 5.2.6 $\operatorname{VE}\left(I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \wedge I\left(\alpha_{k}\right), v\right) \wedge$ $B \Rightarrow \alpha_{i}$ and the second requirement is met.

Finally, by construction $I\left(\alpha_{i}\right)$ contains the union of all the variables in $I\left(\alpha_{j}\right)$ and $I\left(\alpha_{k}\right)$ with the exception of $v$. Also by construction, the $A$-local variables of $\alpha_{i}$ comprise the union of all the $A$-local variables of $\alpha_{j}$ and $\alpha_{k}$ with the exception of $v$. These facts and the induction hypothesis for the third requirement for $\alpha_{j}$ and $\alpha_{k}$ yield that the third requirement for $\alpha_{i}$ is met.

Theorem 5.2.8. Given an $A$-resolution refutation, IGCI returns an interpolant.

Proof. The set $I(\square)$ is the clause-interpolant for $\square$ by Lemma 5.2.7, hence it is an interpolant by Lemma 5.2.4.

Unfortunately, in practice IGCI is still not always scalable because of the exponential blow-up resulting from variable elimination.

Now we are ready to present a scalable algorithm for the construction of an approximated interpolant by generating a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant. The first stage of our algorithm traverses the resolution refutation to generate a non-global-interpolant. The second stage uses bounded variable elimination and then incomplete variable elimination (defined below), if required, to convert the non-global-interpolant to a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant.

Definition 5.2.9 (Incomplete Variable Elimination). Given a CNF formula $F$ and a variable $v \in \operatorname{Vars}(F)$, incomplete variable elimination is an operation that removes $v$ from $F$ by replacing clauses containing the variable $v$ with the set $\operatorname{IVE}(F, v)$ which contains some of the results of a pairwise resolution between $F_{v}^{+}$and $F_{v}^{-}$, where two requirements are met:

1. $|I V E(F, v)| \leq\left|F_{v}^{+}\right|+\left|F_{v}^{-}\right|$
2. Let $\alpha \in F_{v}^{+}\left(F_{v}^{-}\right)$be a clause, if there exists a clause $\beta \in F_{v}^{-}\left(F_{v}^{+}\right)$, such that $\alpha \otimes^{v} \beta$ is not a tautology, then there exists a clause $\gamma \in F_{v}^{-}$ $\left(F_{v}^{+}\right)$where $\alpha \otimes^{v} \gamma \in \operatorname{IVE}(F, v)$ and $\alpha \otimes^{v} \gamma$ is not a tautology.

The idea behind incomplete variable elimination is to omit some of the resolvents when eliminating the variable $v$ in order not to increase the number of clauses, yet to guarantee that each clause containing $v$ has some contribution to the generated set of clauses. Note that while incomplete variable elimination is not sufficient to maintain unsatisfiability for all cases, it may
be sufficient for some cases. Incomplete variable elimination is not uniquely defined.

Our implementation of the procedure is provided in Figure 5.4.
Before presenting our final algorithm, we need to introduce the notion of a non-global-clause-interpolant:

Definition 5.2.10 (Non-Global-Clause-Interpolant). Let $(A, B)$ be an unsatisfiable pair of CNF formulas. Let $\alpha$ be a clause. Then, $I(\alpha)$ is a Non-Global-Clause-Interpolant of $\alpha$ iff:

- $A \Rightarrow I(\alpha)$
- $I(\alpha) \wedge B \Rightarrow \alpha$

Note that a non-global-clause-interpolant of $\square$ is a non-global-interpolant.
Consider now the algorithm described in Figure 5.5. Its first part (lines 221) traverses the resolution refutation and asssociates a non-global-clauseinterpolant with each clause. Consider a visited clause $\alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{k}$ when $v$ is local. First, the algorithm sets $I\left(\alpha_{i}\right)$ to be the union of $I\left(\alpha_{j}\right)$ and $I\left(\alpha_{k}\right)$. It eliminates the variable $v$ if the following two conditions hold: First, that eliminating $v$ does not increase the clause size of $I\left(\alpha_{i}\right)$ (as in the bounded variable elimination of SatELite [27]), and second, that variable elimination has been performed for all clauses backward reachable from $\alpha_{i}$. (The second condition is ensured by using an auxiliary set Skipped for marking clauses for which variable elimination was skipped). The second stage of the algorithm (starting from line 22) uses bounded variable elimination and then incomplete variable elimination to convert the non-global-interpolant to the eventually returned $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant by eliminating $A$-local variables. Note that the bounded variable elimination stage is non-redundant even though bounded variable elimination was performed locally for resolution refutation clauses, since sometimes bounded variable elimination is possible given a large set of clauses while it is impossible given a subset of that set. Note also that the algorithm returns an interpolant rather than merely a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant if

```
function \(\operatorname{IVE}(F, v)\)
    \(\operatorname{IVE}(F, v):=\{ \}\)
    for all \(\alpha \in F_{v}^{+}\)do
    if There exists a non-marked clause \(\beta \in F_{v}^{-}\), such that \(\alpha \otimes^{v} \beta\) is
    not a tautology then
        \(\operatorname{IVE}(F, v):=\operatorname{IVE}(F, v) \cup \alpha \otimes^{v} \beta \quad / / \beta:\) the first clause
    that meets if-condition
        Mark \(\beta\)
    else
        if There exists a clause \(\beta \in F_{v}^{-}\), such that \(\alpha \otimes^{v} \beta\) is not a
    tautology then
                \(\operatorname{IVE}(F, v):=\operatorname{IVE}(F, v) \cup \alpha \otimes^{v} \beta \quad / / \beta:\) the first clause
    that meets if-condition
        end if
            end if
    end for
    for all Unmarked \(\beta \in F_{v}^{-}\)do
        if There exists a clause \(\alpha \in F_{v}^{-}\), such that \(\alpha \otimes^{v} \beta\) is not a tautology
    then
        \(\operatorname{IVE}(F, v):=\operatorname{IVE}(F, v) \cup \alpha \otimes^{v} \beta \quad / / \beta:\) the first clause
    that meets if-condition
        end if
    end for
    return \(\operatorname{IVE}(F, v)\)
end function
```

Figure 5.4: Incomplete Variable Elimination
all the $A$-local variables are succesfully removed before incomplete variable elimination is applied.

Next, we present the proof of Algorithm 5.5 starting with a number of lemmas.

Lemma 5.2.11. A non-global-clause-interpolant of the empty clause $\square$ is a non-global-interpolant.

Proof. Each of the two conditions in the definition of a non-global-clauseinterpolant yields the corresponding condition in the definition of the non-global-interpolant.

Lemma 5.2.12. Each iteration of both for-loops of Algorithm 5.5 constructs a non-global-clause-interpolant $I\left(\alpha_{i}\right)$ for the currently traversed clause $\alpha_{i}$.

Proof. The proof is only briefly sketched here, since it is a simpler version of the proof of Lemma 5.2.7. The proof is again by induction on the number of loop iterations. One needs to prove only the first two clause-interpolant properties in this lemma as compared to the three properties which need to be proved for Lemma 5.2.7 (which makes the proof simpler). Another difference is that variable elimination is not always applied when $\alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{k}$, where $v$ is $A$-local. However, the proof for both properties is straightforward when variable elimination is not applied.

Theorem 5.2.13. Given an A-resolution refutation, Algorithm 5.5 returns a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant.

Proof. At line 22 of the algorithm, the set $I(\square)$ is the non-global-clauseinterpolant forby Lemma 5.2.12, hence it is a non-global-interpolant by Lemma 5.2.11. It is not hard to see that after bounded variable elimination is applied, $I(\square)$ is still a non-global-interpolant (or an interpolant if all the $A$-local variables are eliminated). If incomplete variable elimination is applied, it clearly maintains the property $A \Rightarrow I(\square)$, while at the end of the procedure the property $\operatorname{Vars}(I) \subseteq \operatorname{Vars}(A) \cap \operatorname{Vars}(B)$ is met, since all the $A$-local variables are eliminated. Hence $I(\square)$ is a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant.

```
function \(\operatorname{SIG}\left(\pi_{A}=\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{q}, \alpha_{q+1}, \alpha_{q+2}, \ldots, \alpha_{p} \equiv \square\right)\right)\)
    Skipped \(:=\{ \}\)
    for all \(i \in\{1,2, \ldots, q\}\) do
        \(I\left(\alpha_{i}\right):=\left\{\alpha_{i}\right\}\)
    end for
    for all \(i \in\{q+1, q+2, \ldots, p \equiv \square\}\) do
        if \(\alpha_{i}\) has exactly one parent \(\beta\) then
            \(I\left(\alpha_{i}\right):=I(\beta)\)
        else
            if \(\alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{k}\), where \(v\) is global then
                    \(I\left(\alpha_{i}\right):=I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{k}\right)\)
                else \(\quad / / \alpha_{i}=\alpha_{j} \otimes^{v} \alpha_{k}\), where \(v\) is \(A\)-local
                    \(I\left(\alpha_{i}\right):=I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{k}\right)\)
                if \(\left|V E\left(I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{k}\right), v\right)\right| \leq\left|I\left(\alpha_{j}\right) \cup I\left(\alpha_{k}\right)\right|\) and \(\left\{\alpha_{j}, \alpha_{k}\right\} \cap\)
Skipped \(=\emptyset\) then
                \(I\left(\alpha_{i}\right):=\operatorname{VE}\left(I\left(\alpha_{i}\right), v\right)\)
            else
                    Skipped \(:=\) Skipped \(\cup\left\{\alpha_{i}\right\}\)
            end if
                end if
        end if
    end for
    Apply bounded variable elimination for \(A\)-local variables over \(I(\square)\)
    if \(I(\square)\) then do not contain \(A\)-local variables
        return \(I(\square) \quad / /\) In this case \(I(\square)\) is an interpolant
    else
        Apply incomplete variable elimination for \(A\)-local variables over
\(I(\square)\)
        return \(I(\square) \quad / /\) In this case \(I(\square)\) is a \(B_{\text {weak }}\)-interpolant
    end if
end function
```

Figure 5.5: $B_{\text {weak }}$-Interpolant Generation

### 5.3 Using $B_{\text {weak }}$-Interpolants In Model Checking

In this section we describe a model checking algorithm that uses $B_{\text {weak }}{ }^{-}$ interpolants. Our algorithm is composed of two main stages. Recall that by Definition 5.1.2, a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant fulfills two out of the three conditions of an interpolant. Therefore, the first stage transforms the $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant into an interpolant.

The second stage uses interpolants computed by the first stage. In essence, the second stage is a modification of the original ITP and is called CNF-ITP. Besides the fact that CNF-ITP uses interpolants in CNF, it further takes advantage of this fact by applying optimizations which are possible only as a result of using interpolants in CNF.

Before going into the details of CNF-ITP, we describe ITP.

### 5.3.1 Interpolation-Based Model Checking Revisited

We have described ITP in detail in Chapter 2, we give a quick overview here. ITP [43] is a complete SAT-based model checking algorithm. It uses interpolation to over-approximate the reachable states in a transition system $M$ with respect to a property $p$. ITP uses nested loops where the outer loop increases the depth of unrolling and the inner loop computes the reachable states. ITP is described in Figure 5.6

Definition 5.3.1. Let $k$ and $n$ be the depth of unrolling used in the outer loop and the iteration of the inner loop of ITP, respectively. Let us denote $\bar{F}=\left\langle I N I T, I_{1}^{k} \ldots, I_{n}^{k}\right\rangle$ the resulting FRS. We define $R_{n}^{k}=I N I T \vee I_{1}^{k} \vee I_{2}^{k} \vee \ldots \vee$ $I_{n}^{k}$ to be the set of reachable states computed by the inner loop of ITP after $n$ iterations and with respect to unrolling depth $k$. For a given $1 \leq j \leq n$, $I_{j}^{k}$ is the interpolant computed in the $j$-th iteration of the inner loop.

From this point and on, $k$ and $n$ refer to the depth of unrolling used in

```
function \(\operatorname{ITP}(M, p)\)
    if \(I N I T \wedge \neg p==\) SAT then
        return cex
    end if
    \(k=1\)
    while true do
        result \(=\operatorname{ComputeReachable}(M, p, k)\)
        if result \(==\) fixpoint then
            return Valid
        else if result \(==\) cex then
            return cex
        end if
        \(k=k+1\)
    end while
end function
```

Figure 5.6: Interpolation-Based Model Checking (ITP)
the outer loop and the iteration of the inner loop of ITP, respectively.
In general, the inner loop checks a fixed-bound BMC [4] formula where at each iteration only the initial states are replaced with an interpolant computed at a previous iteration (lines 22 and 30). This is done until the BMC formula becomes SAT (line: 30) or until a fixpoint is reached (lines: 25-27). In the former case, the outer loop increases the unrolling depth by $1^{2}$ (line: 13) in order to either increase the precision of the over-approximations or to find a counterexample.

Lemma 5.3.2. $R_{n}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge$ path ${ }^{0, k-1} \wedge\left(\bigvee_{j=0}^{k-1} \neg p\left(V^{j}\right)\right)$ is unsatisfiable.
Proof. The proof is immediate from the interpolant definition (Definition 2.3.1) and from the definition of $R_{n}^{k}$. Let $k$ and $n$ be the depth of unrolling used in the outer loop and the iteration of the inner loop of ITP respectively and let $\bar{F}=\left\langle I_{0}^{k}=I N I T, I_{1}^{k} \ldots, I_{n}^{k}\right\rangle$ be the FRS computed by ITP. For

[^7]```
function ComputeReachable ( \(M, p, k\) )
    \(R_{0}^{k}=I N I T, I_{0}^{k}=I N I T, n=1\)
    if \(I_{0}^{k} \wedge\) path \(^{0, k} \wedge\left(\neg p\left(V^{1}\right) \vee \ldots \vee \neg p\left(V^{k}\right)\right)==\) SAT then
        return cex
    end if
    repeat
        \(A=I_{n-1}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge T R\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right)\)
        \(B=\operatorname{path}^{1, k} \wedge\left(\neg p\left(V^{1}\right) \vee \ldots \vee \neg p\left(V^{k}\right)\right)\)
        \(I_{n}^{k}=\operatorname{GetInterpolant}(A, B)\)
        if \(I_{n}^{k} \Rightarrow R_{n-1}^{k}\) then
                return fixpoint
        end if
        \(R_{n}^{k}=R_{n-1}^{k} \vee I_{n}^{k}\)
        \(n=n+1\)
    until \(I_{n-1}^{k} \wedge\) path \(^{0, k} \wedge\left(\neg p\left(V^{1}\right) \vee \ldots \vee \neg p\left(V^{k}\right)\right)==\operatorname{SAT}\)
end function
```

Figure 5.7: Inner loop of ITP
$0 \leq j \leq n-1, I_{j}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge \operatorname{path}^{0, k} \wedge\left(\bigvee_{j=0}^{k} \neg p\left(V^{j}\right)\right)$ is unsatisfiable and $I_{j+1}^{k}$ is the interpolant derived from the proof of unsatisfiability for this formula. Thus, for $0 \leq j \leq n I_{j}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge$ path $^{0, k-1} \wedge\left(\bigvee_{j=0}^{k-1} \neg p\left(V^{j}\right)\right)$ is unsatisfiable, and by that $R_{n}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge$ path $^{0, k-1} \wedge\left(\bigvee_{j=0}^{k-1} \neg p\left(V^{j}\right)\right)$ is unsatisfiable.
$R_{n}^{k}$ is also referred to as $(k-1)$-adequate.

### 5.3.2 Transforming a $B_{\text {weak-Interpolant Into an Inter- }}$ polant Using Inductive Reasoning

As we have shown in Section 5.2, given a pair of formulas $(A, B)$ such that $A \wedge B$ is unsatisfiable, a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant $I_{w}$ can be computed. By Definition 5.1.2, $A \Rightarrow I_{w}$ and $\operatorname{Vars}\left(I_{w}\right) \subseteq \operatorname{Vars}(A) \cap \operatorname{Vars}(B)$, but it is not guaranteed that $I_{w} \wedge B$ is unsatisfiable. Intuitively, we can think of $I_{w}$ as being too over-approximated and therefore needing strengthening with respect to $B$.

Definition 5.3.3 (B-adequate). Let $(A, B)$ be a pair of formulas s.t. $A \wedge B \equiv$ $\perp$ and let $I_{w}$ be a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant for $(A, B)$. We say that $I_{w}$ is $B$-adequate iff $I_{w} \wedge B \equiv \perp$.

Following the above definition, our purpose is to make a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant $I_{w} \mathrm{~B}$-adequate. We refer to this procedure as $B$-Strengthening.

The purpose of this section is to demonstrate the use of $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolants for model checking, in particular in the context of ITP.

Definition 5.3.4 ( $k$ - $n$-pair). Given the formulas $A=I_{n-1}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge T R\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right)$ and $B=$ path $^{1, k} \wedge\left(\bigvee_{i=1}^{k} \neg p\left(V^{i}\right)\right)$. The pair $(A, B)$ is called a $k$ - $n$-pair. When $A \wedge B \equiv \perp$ we call $(A, B)$ an inconsistent $k$-n-pair.

Consider a run of ITP for a given $k$ and $n$. We aim at computing $I_{n}^{k}$. Let $(A, B)$ be an inconsistent $k$ - $n$-pair and let $I_{w}$ be the $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant for $(A, B)$. If $I_{w}$ is B-adequate then it is an interpolant and therefore $I_{n}^{k}$ can be defined to be $I_{w}$. If $I_{w}$ is not B-adequate we are required to apply B-Strengthening and transform $I_{w}$ into an interpolant.

Let us assume that $I_{w}$ is not B-adequate and that $I_{w}\left(V^{1}\right) \wedge B$ is satisfiable. There exists a state $s \in I_{w}$ such that $s\left(V^{1}\right) \wedge B$ is satisfiable. Intuitively, in order to make $I_{w} \mathrm{~B}$-adequate, and by that an interpolant, we would like to remove $s$ from it.

Clearly, $A \wedge s\left(V^{1}\right)$ is unsatisfiable; otherwise $A \wedge B$ would have been satisfiable. Thus, B-Strengthening can be done by iterating all assignments for $I_{w}\left(V^{1}\right) \wedge B$, extracting a state $s \in I_{w}$ from an assignment and blocking it in $I_{w}$. This is an inefficient way to perform B-Strengthening since the number of such assignments may be too large.

To overcome this, we use knowledge about the problem at hand. Namely, we take into account the fact that $A$ is of the following form: $A=I_{n-1}^{k}(V) \wedge$ $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)$.

Definition 5.3.5 (Relatively Inductive). Let $R$ and $Q$ be propositional formulas and $M$ a transition system. We say that $Q$ is relatively inductive with
respect to $R$ and $M$ if $(R(V) \wedge Q(V)) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow Q\left(V^{\prime}\right)$. When $M$ is clear from the context we omit it.

Recall that by Definition 5.3.1 $R_{n}^{k}$ represents an over-approximation of all reachable states after up to $n$ transitions and it is $(k-1)$-adequate (Lemma 5.3.2).

Lemma 5.3.6. Let $(A, B)$ be an inconsistent $k$-n-pair. Let $I_{w}$ be the $B_{\text {weak }}{ }^{-}$ interpolant for $(A, B)$. If $s$ is an assignment to $V$ s.t. $s\left(V^{1}\right) \wedge B$ is satisfiable, then the following holds:

- $R_{n-1}^{k} \Rightarrow \neg s$
- $R_{n-1}^{k} \wedge \mathrm{TR} \Rightarrow \neg s^{\prime}$

Proof. From Lemma 5.3.2 we know that $R_{n-1}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge$ path $^{0, k-1} \wedge\left(\bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} \neg p\left(V^{i}\right)\right)$ is unsatisfiable. Since $s$ represents a state that can reach the bad states in $k-$ 1 steps or less, $s$ cannot be part of $R_{n-1}^{k}$. Thus, $s \notin R_{n-1}^{k}$ and $R_{n-1}^{k} \Rightarrow \neg s$. We now need to show that $s$ cannot be reached from $R_{n-1}^{k}$. By Definition 5.3.1, $R_{n-1}^{k}=I N I T \vee I_{1}^{k} \vee \ldots \vee I_{n-1}^{k}$. Since $(A, B)$ is an inconsistent $k$ - $n$-pair, $I_{n-1}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge T R\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right) \wedge \operatorname{path}^{1, k} \wedge\left(\bigvee_{i=1}^{k} \neg p\left(V^{i}\right)\right)$ is unsatisfiable. By that, and by the fact that $R_{n-1}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge \operatorname{path}^{0, k-1} \wedge\left(\bigvee_{i=0}^{k-1} \neg p\left(V^{i}\right)\right)$ is unsatisfaible ( $R_{n-1}^{k}$ is ( $k-1$ )-adequte) we know that $R_{n-1}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge \operatorname{path}^{0, k} \wedge\left(\bigvee_{i=0}^{k} \neg p\left(V^{i}\right)\right)$ is unsatisfiable. Using the same reasoning as before, since $s$ represents a state that can reach the bad states in $k-1$ steps or less, it cannot be reached from $R_{n-1}^{k}$ and thus it is immediate that $R_{n-1}^{k} \wedge T R \Rightarrow \neg s^{\prime}$.

The above lemma states that if a state $s$ can reach a bad state in up to $k-1$ transitions, it cannot be a state in the set $R_{n-1}^{k}$. Consider a $B_{\text {weak }}{ }^{-}$ interpolant $I_{w}$ derived from the pair $(A, B)$, and assume $s \in I_{w}$ (derived from the satisfying assignment to $I_{w}\left(V^{1}\right) \wedge B$ ), then $s$ follows the condition in Lemma 5.3.6. Therefore, $R_{n-1}^{k} \Rightarrow \neg s$ and $R_{n-1}^{k} \wedge T R \Rightarrow \neg s^{\prime}$ hold and by that $\left(R_{n-1}^{k} \wedge \neg s\right) \wedge T R \Rightarrow \neg s$ holds. By Definition 5.3.5 $\neg s$ is relatively inductive with respect to $R_{n-1}^{k}$. Therefore, $\neg s$ can be inductively generalized [8].

```
function FindMissingClauses \(\left(R, I_{w}, B, n\right)\)
    \(C=\emptyset\)
    while \(\left(I_{w} \wedge C\right)\left(V^{1}\right) \wedge B==\) SAT do \(\quad / /\) When \(C=\emptyset\) it is evaluated
as T
    Get \(s \in I_{w}\) from the SAT assignment
    \(c=\operatorname{InductiveGEnERALIzation}(R, s, C)\)
    \(C=C \cup c\)
    end while
    StoreClauses \((n)\)
    return \(C\)
end function
```

Figure 5.8: Find the clauses needed for the $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant $I_{w}$ to be Badequate

Inductive generalization results in a sub-clause $c$ of $\neg s$ such that $\left(R_{n-1}^{k} \wedge\right.$ c) $\wedge T R \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$ and $I N I T \Rightarrow c . c$ can then be used to strengthen $I_{w}$ and $R_{n-1}^{k}$. Adding the clause $c$ to $I_{w}$ removes $s$ from $I_{w}$. This process is then iterated until $I_{w}$ becomes B-adequate and hence an interpolant. The algorithm for finding the clauses that make $I_{w}$ B-adequate is described in Figure 5.8.

Theorem 5.3.7. Let $(A, B)$ be an inconsistent $k$-n-pair. Let $I_{w}$ be a $B_{\text {weak }}{ }^{-}$ interpolant and let $c_{1}, \ldots, c_{m}$ be clauses s.t. INIT $\Rightarrow c_{i}$ and $c_{i}$ is relatively inductive with respect to $R_{n-1}^{k}$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$. If $\left(I_{w} \wedge \bigwedge_{j=1}^{m} c_{j}\right) \wedge B \equiv \perp$ then $I_{w} \wedge \bigwedge_{i=1}^{m} c_{i}$ is an interpolant w.r.t $A=\left(I_{n-1}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge \bigwedge_{j=1}^{m} c_{j}\left(V^{0}\right)\right) \wedge \mathrm{TR}\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right)$ and $B=$ path $^{1, k} \wedge\left(\bigvee_{i=1}^{k} \neg p\left(V^{i}\right)\right)$.

Proof. Let us denote $I=I_{w} \wedge \bigwedge_{i=1}^{m} c_{i}$. Clearly, $I \wedge B$ is unsatisfiable and $I$ is over the shared variables of $A$ and $B$. We only need to show that $A \Rightarrow I$. Since $I_{w}$ is a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant, $A \Rightarrow I_{w}$. Now we only need to show that $A \Rightarrow \bigwedge_{i=1}^{m} c_{i}$. Each $c_{i}$ is relatively inductive w.r.t. $R_{n-1}^{k}$. In particular, $I_{n-1}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge T R\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right) \Rightarrow c_{i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$. Thus, $A \Rightarrow c_{i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq m$ and therefore $A \Rightarrow \bigwedge_{i=1}^{m} c_{i}$. Thus, $A \Rightarrow I$.

### 5.3.3 CNF-ITP: Using $B_{\text {weak }}$-Interpolants in ITP

Above we described how a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant is transformed into an interpolant efficiently for model checking. In this section we present CNF-ITP, a model checking algorithm that is based on ITP. CNF-ITP uses the method described above to compute interpolants. In addition, it uses optimizations that are possible as a result of using interpolants in CNF.

Like the original ITP, our version consists of two nested loops. Since the computation of interpolants is performed in the inner loop, this is where we have made most of our modifications and optimizations. Recall that in the inner loop a BMC formula of a fixed-bound is checked iteratively, where at each iteration only the initial states are replaced by the interpolants computed in the previous iteration. Our modified version of the inner loop appears in Figure 5.9

As before, we consider $k$ to be the unrolling depth set by the outer loop and used in the inner loop and $n$ to be the iteration during the execution of the inner loop.

The beginning of the loop is similar to the original inner loop of ITP. First, a counterexample of length $k$ is checked (lines: 44-46). If no counterexample exists the pair $(A, B)$ is defined and a $B_{\text {weak-interpolant }} I_{w}$ is computed (line: 50). Then, two optimizations are applied. First, clauses are pushed forward (line: 51). Second, previously computed interpolant is conjoined to the currently computed $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant (line: 52). We will go into more details in the next section. Since $I_{w}$ may not be B-adequate, the B-Strengthening process may need to add clauses to it (to strengthen it). Adding clauses to $I_{w}$ before B-Strengthening results in a more efficient B-Strengthening. Moreover, after pushing clauses forward and adding clauses from the previously computed interpolant, $I_{w}$ may become B-adequate, thereby rendering B -Strengthening redundant.

After applying the two optimizations, B-Strengthening is invoked (line 53). Then the clauses learned during this process are conjoined with $R_{n-1}^{k}$ and
$I_{n-1}^{k}$ (line 56), and $I_{w}$ (line 57). After conjoining the clauses, $I_{n}^{k}$ is an interpolant. The rest of the loop is identical to the original inner loop of ITP.

We now describe the optimizations in more detail.

### 5.3.3.1 Pushing Clauses Forward

Let us consider the interpolant $I_{n}^{k}$ computed during the $n$-th iteration of the inner loop. Since $I_{n}^{k}$ is given in CNF, assume that $I_{n-1}^{k}=\left\{c_{1}, \ldots, c_{m}\right\}$ where $c_{i}$ is a clause for every $1 \leq i \leq m$.

Definition 5.3.8. Let $M$ be a transition system and let $F=\left\{c_{1}, \ldots, c_{m}\right\}$ be a formula in CNF where $c_{i}$ is a clause over $V$ for every $1 \leq i \leq m$. A clause $c_{i}$ for some $1 \leq i \leq n$ is said to be pushable if $F(V) \wedge T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right) \Rightarrow c_{i}\left(V^{\prime}\right)$ holds.

After the computation of a $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant $I_{w}$, we try to find pushable clauses in the previous interpolant. Those clauses can be made part of the new interpolant. More precisely, if a clause $c_{i} \in I_{n-1}^{k}$ is pushable then we add it to $I_{w}$ such that $I_{w}=I_{w} \wedge c_{i}$. Adding the pushable clauses to the $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolant strengthens it and may make it B-adequate.

### 5.3.3.2 Incremental Interpolants

The outer loop of CNF-ITP (and ITP) increases the unrolling depth when a more precise over-approximation is needed. Let $I_{1}^{1}$ be the interpolant computed in the first iteration of the inner loop for $k=1$ and let $I_{1}^{2}$ be the interpolant computed in the first iteration of the inner loop for $k=2$. Clearly, since both $I_{1}^{1}$ and $I_{1}^{2}$ over-approximate the states reachable in one transition from the initial states, $I_{1}^{1} \wedge I_{1}^{2}$ is also an over-approximation of the same set of states. Usually, the size of the interpolants is an issue. Therefore, whenever the inner loop terminates and the bound is increased, all computed interpolants are discarded and are not re-used [42]. Since our method produces interpolants in CNF that are usually small, this conjunction does not create

```
function ComputeReachableCNF \((M, p, k)\)
    \(R_{0}^{k}=I N I T, I_{0}^{k}=I N I T, n=1\)
    if \(I_{0}^{k} \wedge \operatorname{path}^{0, k} \wedge\left(\neg p\left(V^{1}\right) \vee \ldots \vee \neg p\left(V^{k}\right)\right)==\) SAT then
        return cex
    end if
    repeat
        \(A=I_{n-1}^{k}\left(V^{0}\right) \wedge T R\left(V^{0}, V^{1}\right)\)
        \(B=\operatorname{path}^{1, k} \wedge\left(\neg p\left(V^{1}\right) \vee \ldots \vee \neg p\left(V^{k}\right)\right)\)
        \(I_{w}=\operatorname{GetBWeakInterpolant}(A, B)\)
        PushInductiveClauses \(\left(I_{w}, n-1\right)\)
        \(I_{w}=I_{w} \wedge I_{n}^{k-1} \quad / /\) For \(k=1, I_{n}^{0}=\top\)
        \(C=\operatorname{FindMissingClauses}\left(R_{n-1}^{k}, I_{w}, B\right)\)
        \(I_{n}^{k}=I_{w}\)
        for all \(c \in C\) do
            \(R_{n-1}^{k}=R_{n-1}^{k} \wedge c \quad / /\) Implicitly conjoining \(c\) with \(I_{n-1}^{k}\)
            \(I_{n}^{k}=I_{n}^{k} \wedge c\)
        end for
        if \(I_{n}^{k} \Rightarrow R_{n-1}^{k}\) then
                return fixpoint
        end if
        \(R_{n}^{k}=R_{n-1}^{k} \vee I_{n}^{k}\)
        \(n=n+1\)
        until \(I_{n-1}^{k} \wedge \operatorname{path}^{0, k} \wedge\left(\neg p\left(V^{1}\right) \vee \ldots \vee \neg p\left(V^{k}\right)\right)==\) SAT
    end function
```

Figure 5.9: Inner loop of CNF-ITP
huge CNF formula. This re-use of previously computed interpolants increases the efficiency of CNF-ITP as compared to ITP.

### 5.4 Experimental Results

Our approach includes two major parts. The first part computes a $B_{\text {weak }}{ }^{-}$ interpolant from a resolution refutation, and the second part applies BStrengthening and a model checking algorithm CNF-ITP. The computation
of $B_{\text {weak }}$-interpolants was implemented on top of MiniSAT 2.2. CNF-ITP and ITP were implemented in a closed-source model checker. For IC3 we used the publicly available ABC framework ${ }^{3}$. In the results we also include the runtime for ABC's ITP implementation in order to show the efficiency of our implementation.

To evaluate our method we used a representative subset of the HWMCC'12 benchmark set. All experiments were conducted on a system with an Intel E5-2687W running at 3.1 GHz with 32 GB of memory. Timeout was set to 900 seconds. As mentioned, we sought to test two aspects: the size of the resulting interpolants and the impact on model checking.

In Figure 5.10 a comparison between interpolants sizes is presented. Note that in the majority of cases, interpolants generated by CNF-ITP are orders of magnitude smaller than those generated by the traditional method (For ITP, the number of clauses is after translation of the interpolants to CNF). Considering the entire set of benchmarks we see that CNF-ITP generates interpolants that are 117 times smaller than those generated by the traditional method.

Comparing the run-time of the model checking algorithms shows that our CNF-ITP algorithm outperforms ITP and IC3 in terms of the overall run-time on this subset. CNF-ITP outperforms ITP on 32 instances, where in 16 of these instances ITP times out. ITP outperforms CNF-ITP in 21 cases only. CNF-ITP outperforms IC3 in 18 cases, but IC3 is preferable in 23 cases. CNF-ITP is the absolutely best algorithm in 14 cases. Figure 5.11 shows a comparison of CNF-ITP to the other two algorithms.

Table 5.1 presents a detailed analysis of the experiments. We chose all valid benchmarks that either ITP or CNF-ITP could prove in the given time frame ( 55 cases). Consider Table 5.1. As was shown in Figure 5.10 our method generates significantly smaller interpolants in almost every case. Summarizing the average size of all computed interpolants shows that CNF-

[^8]

Figure 5.10: Comparing sizes of generated interpolants. Y-axis represents interpolants generated by CNF-ITP and X-axis represents interpolants generated by ITP.

ITP generates interpolants that are 49 times smaller than those generated by ITP. Note that average interpolant computation time is in the same ballpark for both methods.

Another interesting aspect of the comparison between CNF-ITP and ITP is the convergence bound. We can see that in many cases the bound is different. This indicates that the strength of the interpolants computed by the two methods is different and affects the results of the model checking algorithm.

Analysis of the results in the table shows that whenever the number of clauses in the interpolants computed by CNF-ITP is significantly smaller than the number of clauses in the interpolants computed by ITP, the former performs better.

In the cases where the size of interpolants is fairly the same, ITP performs better. This can be explained by the fact that ITP computes small interpolants when the resolution refutation is small. Therefore, computing the interpolants in ITP is more efficient in these cases since it only requires linear traversal over the resolution refutation. In contrast, our method requires B-Strengthening, a process that is in some cases expensive. We conclude that when the resulting interpolants in ITP are large, CNF-ITP has a significant advantage in the vast majority of cases.

When analyzing results from the entire HWMCC'12 benchmark, we have found that in CNF-ITP $95 \%$ of the clauses are generated using SIG. This result shows the importance of SIG when computing the interpolants. Yet, B-strengthening is also critical, since only around $25 \%$ of the instances were solved solely by SIG.

### 5.5 Conclusions

CNF-ITP uses key elements of ITP and IC3. On the one hand, like ITP, CNF-ITP uses the resolution refutation to get information about the reach-
able states. This information is only partial, and therefore CNF-ITP also uses inductive generalization, a key element of IC3, to complete the computation of reachable states. Since the reachable states are computed by means of over-approximations, there are cases in which the precision of these approximations must be increased. To do so, CNF-ITP uses unrolling, like in ITP. In addition, it uses the fact that interpolants are given in CNF and tries to reuse clauses that have already been learnt (both by pushing the clauses forward and by using previously computed interpolants). CNF-ITP can be viewed as a hybridization of the monolithic approach (ITP) and the incremental approach (IC3). We believe that there are well-founded grounds for comparing the three algorithms, and that further development can bring about an even tighter integration of ITP and IC3. This discussion, however, is outside the scope of this paper and is an avenue for future research.

(a) Runtime ITP vs. CNF-ITP.

(b) Runtime IC3 vs. CNF-ITP

Figure 5.11: Y-axis represents CNF-ITP's runtime in seconds. X-axis represents runtime in seconds for the compared algorithm (IC3 or ITP). Points below the diagonal are in favor of CNF-ITP.

Table 5.1: Experiment parameters on part of the benchmarks. Name: property name; $\sharp$ Vars: number of state variables in the cone of influence; $k$ is the bound of the outer loop at which fixpoint was found; total $_{n}$ is the total number of iterations executed by the inner loop; clauses ${ }_{\text {Avg }}$ is the average number of clauses representing each computed interpolant; Extract[ s ] is the average time to compute an interpolant in seconds; $\mathrm{MC}[\mathrm{s}]$ is the total runtime of the algorithm in seconds. Values in boldface are the best of all three. Underlined runtime is for cases where CNF-ITP outperforms ITP and Italic is for cases where CNF-ITP outperforms IC3.

|  |  | $\mathrm{IC} 3_{\mathrm{ABC}}$ | $\mathrm{ITP}_{\text {ABC }}$ | ITP |  |  |  |  | CNF-ITP |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Name | \#Vars | $\mathrm{MC}[\mathrm{s}]$ | $\mathrm{MC}[\mathrm{s}]$ | $k$ | total ${ }_{n}$ | clauses $_{\text {Avg }}$ | Extract[s] | MC[s] | $k$ | total ${ }_{n}$ | clauses $_{\text {Avg }}$ | Extract[s] | $\mathrm{MC}[\mathrm{s}]$ |
| beembkry1b1 | 76 | 4.68 | 758 | 15 | 72 | 94495 | 3.14 | 792 | 20 | 83 | 1830 | 0.65 | 248 |
| beembrptwo1f2 | 227 | 7.02 | TO | 59 | 650 | 2905 | 0.83 | TO | 40 | 1135 | 227 | 0.03 | 114 |
| beembrptwo5f2 | 227 | 292 | TO | 81 | 1105 | 5 | 0.29 | TO | 29 | 1326 | 155 | 0.01 | 13 |
| beemcollib1 | 132 | 11.77 | TO | 9 | 51 | 45563 | 2.09 | 577 | 11 | 52 | 487 | 0.28 | 201 |
| beemexit5f1 | 246 | 7.11 | 106 | 25 | 218 | 15792 | 1.21 | 611 | 25 | 255 | 792 | 0.3 | 466 |
| beemfish4fi | 94 | 4.41 | TÖ | 15 | 50 | 63423 | 3.26 | TO | 14 | 59 | 1348 | 0.72 | 85 |
| beemfwt1b1 | 1214 | 321.86 | 396 | 4 | 18 | 5721 | 0.23 | 10.58 | 4 | 15 | 62 | 38.14 | TO |
| beemfwt5f2 | 3045 | 543.32 | 14.68 | 5 | 9 | 854 | 0.009 | 2.2 | 5 | 10 | 22 | 0.00 | 2.01 |
| beemlmprt5f1 | 121 | 4.29 | TO | 14 | 65 | 59503 | 3.9 | TO | 12 | 72 | 1423 | 1.3 | 194 |
| beemmsmie1b1 | 89 | 28.2 | TO | 4 | 12 | 230498 | 11 | TO | 5 | 18 | 1126 | 22 | 505 |
| beemndhm 2 f 2 | 251 | 13.53 | 138 | 7 | 49 | 29051 | 1.07 | 213 | 5 | 10 | 143 | 0.14 | 2.92 |
| beempgmprot1b1 | 1025 | 8.03 | 97 | 33 | 218 | 1121 | 0.82 | TO | 19 | 113 | 61 | 0.00 | 27.65 |
| beempgmprot7b1 | 1033 | 591.49 | 204 | 27 | 168 | 2717 | 1.23 | TO | 18 | 153 | 237 | 0.00 | 36.21 |
| beemtlphn5fi | 249 | 29.81 | TÖ | 12 | 60 | 73460 | 5.27 | TÖ | 20 | $\underline{6} 6$ | 1197 | 0.06 | TÖ |
| beemrshr3b1 | 720 | TO | TO | 8 | 56 | 8043 | 2.17 | 437 | 8 | 41 | 58 | 16 | TO |
| beemtrngt2b1 | 170 | 1.55 | TO | 29 | 193 | 31942 | 1.95 | TO | 15 | 154 | 618 | 0.08 | 23.42 |
| beemtrngt4b1 | 228 | 44.71 | TO | 29 | 196 | 22144 | 1.56 | TO | 30 | 281 | 371 | 0.71 | TO |
| bob05 | 2404 | 7.5 | 275 | 24 | 121 | 962 | 0.37 | 221 | 24 | 136 | 198 | 0.38 | 113 |
| bob1u05cu | 4377 | 7.66 | 235 | 24 | 124 | 3116 | 0.45 | 251 | 24 | 147 | 272 | 0.19 | 152 |
| bobaesdinvdmit | 1335 | 56.12 | TO | 4 | 12 | 122692 | 34.4 | TO | 3 | 21 | 2408 | 6.2 | $\underline{278}$ |
| eijkbs3330 | 246 | 7.2 | TO | 3 | 6 | 764550 | 22.74 | TO | 3 | 9 | 5873 | 10.44 | 154 |
| pdtpmsviper | 580 | 108 | TO | 4 | 6 | 903732 | 13 | TO | 3 | 9 | 2304 | 21 | $\underline{233}$ |
| 6s38 | 1931 | TO | TO | 10 | 33 | 84988 | 1.19 | TO | 7 | 22 | 4299 | 15.7 | 423 |
| 6 6102 | 1121 | TO | TO | 37 | 275 | 21947 | 0.5 | TO | 25 | 137 | 654 | 1.3 | 233 |
| 6 s 108 | 782 | 4.83 | TO | 8 | 43 | 89493 | 3.67 | TO | 7 | 25 | 1787 | 0.56 | 42.65 |
| 6s120 | 58 | 0.71 | 4.1 | 3 | 6 | 365 | 0.34 | 6.5 | 3 | 8 | 373 | 0.12 | 2.92 |
| 6s121 | 419 | 821.54 | TO | 24 | 214 | 4542 | 0.08 | 46.25 | 18 | 98 | 389 | 0.04 | 14.42 |
| 6 s 130 | 811 | TO | 18.7 | 7 | 17 | 43237 | 2.6 | 123 | 6 | 11 | 5264 | 55 | TO |
| 6 s131 | 811 | TO | 19.2 | 9 | 21 | 75167 | 6 | 407 | 7 | 9 | 2757 | 42 | TO |
| 6 s 132 | 139 | 2.87 | 7.5 | 7 | 13 | 35973 | 2.88 | 85 | 5 | 13 | 4221 | 3.5 | 76 |
| 6s136 | 3342 | TO | 3.1 | 20 | 58 | 2471 | 0.005 | 4.4 | 20 | 53 | 16 | 0.00 | 1.94 |
| 6s151 | 150 | TO | TO | 14 | 515 | 1998 | 0.22 | 461 | 10 | 122 | 6226 | 3.15 | TÖ |
| 6s159 | 252 | 0.03 | 7.8 | 15 | 143 | 656 | 0.01 | 4.9 | 10 | 60 | 27 | 0.00 | 0.34 |
| 6s164 | 198 | 8.96 | TO | 18 | 77 | 753 | 0.02 | 3.7 | 18 | 85 | 135 | 0.006 | 2.43 |
| 6s181 | 607 | TO | 26.2 | 8 | 19 | 63509 | 4.58 | 232 | 6 | 10 | 2556 | 6.45 | TO |
| 6s183 | 607 | TO | 18 | 10 | 24 | 87782 | 1 | 612 | 7 | 9 | 5641 | 53.64 | TO |
| 6s189 | 2434 | TO | TÖ | 18 | 86 | 10103.779 | 1 | 864 | 15 | 29 | 202 | 0.12 | TÖ |
| 6 ¢194 | 2389 | TO | TO | 47 | 300 | 8312.99 | 1 | 721 | 48 | 378 | 606 | 0.68 | 403 |
| 6s19 | 607 | TO | 8.95 | 8 | 19 | 78338.632 | 1 | 333 | 5 | 9 | 2346 | 7.72 | TO |
| 6 s 4 | 202 | TÖ | TÖ | 79 | 6758 | 56.597 | 1 | TO | 79 | 88633 | 300 | 0.01 | 580 |
| 6s51 | 3107 | 96.65 | TO | 52 | 416 | 3960.346 | 1 | 774 | 54 | 540 | 1198 | 1.045 | TO |
| 6 s 6 | 429 | 6.29 | 53.7 | 12 | 29 | 46353.31 | 1 | 540 | 12 | 29 | 182 | 2.677 | TÖ |
| 6 s 9 | 607 | TO | 29.2 | 8 | 19 | 63509 | 1 | 238 | 5 | 9 | 2236 | 6.901 | TÖ |
| intel010 | 539 | TO | TO | 16 | 168 | 18092 | 0.4 | 184 | 17 | 354 | 850 | 2 | TO |
| intel011 | 533 | TO | TÖ | 18 | 268 | 14526 | 0.4 | 322 | 20 | 544 | 606 | 1 | TÖ |
| intel018 | 491 | TO | TO | 14 | 399 | 1186 | 0.02 | 29 | 16 | 491 | 187 | 1 | TÖ |
| intel019 | 510 | TO | TO | 16 | 3950 | 1345 | 0.02 | 35 | 16 | 388 | 45 | 1.5 | TO |
| intel020 | 354 | TO | TO | 14 | 251 | 2388 | 0.04 | 32 | 15 | 379 | 264 | 0.06 | 49 |
| intel021 | 365 | TO | TO | 18 | 316 | 2503 | 0.05 | 51.3 | 18 | 489 | 331 | 0.14 | 117 |
| intel022 | 530 | TO | TÖ | 21 | 435 | 18818 | 0.5 | 629 | 20 | 555 | 585 | 1.05 | TÖ |
| intel023 | 358 | TO | TO | 30 | 593 | 3339 | 0.1 | 233 | 32 | 1058 | 290 | 0.09 | 197 |
| intel024 | 357 | TO | TO | 15 | 233 | 3087 | 0.04 | 34.5 | 15 | 341 | 206 | 0.12 | 83 |
| intel028 | 7436 | TO | TO | 28 | 559 | 3564 | 0.2 | TO | 26 | 770 | 194 | 0.44 | 642 |
| intel031 | 531 | TO | TO | 21 | 268 | 3465 | 0.15 | 114 | 18 | 235 | 183 | 0.03 | 61 |
| intel034 | 3297 | TO | TO | 16 | 425 | 1477 | 0.02 | 85 | 16 | 432 | 83 | 0.19 | 119 |
| Total |  | 26442 | 33920 |  |  | 3279594 | 143 | 26519 |  |  | 66454 | 326 | 22996 |

## Chapter 6

## Lazy Abstraction and SAT-based Reachability

This work is based a paper that appeared in [58]. In this work we introduce a novel lazy abstraction-refinement technique for hardware model checking, integrated with the SAT-based algorithm IC3 [8].

Most SAT-based model checking algorithms are based on an unrolling of the model's transition relation in order to traverse its state space. In contrast, the recently introduced IC3 algorithm [8] avoids such unrolling. To verify a safety property, IC3 gradually builds a series of sets of states $F_{0}, \ldots, F_{i}, \ldots$, where $F_{i}$ over-approximates the set of states reachable within $i$ steps from the initial states. The computation moves back and forth along the $F_{i}$ 's and strengthens them by eliminating unreachable states. This is done via local reachability checks between consecutive sets $F_{i}$ and $F_{i+1}$. IC3 either reaches a fixpoint, in which case all reachable states satisfy the desired property, or returns a counterexample.

Abstraction-refinement is a well known methodology for tackling the state-explosion problem. Abstraction hides model details that are not relevant for the checked property. The resulting abstract model is then smaller. Lazy abstraction [36, 44], developed for software model checking, is a spe-
cific type of abstraction that allows hiding different model details at different steps of the verification.

In this work we develop, for the first time, a lazy abstraction-refinement framework for hardware. We use the visible variables abstraction [40], which is particularly suitable for hardware. However, we use it in a lazy manner in the sense that different sets of visible variables are used in different iterations of the state-space traversal.

We find the IC3 algorithm most suitable for lazy abstraction since its state traversal is performed by means of local reachability checks, each involving only two consecutive sets. Thus, at each check a different set of variables is relevant.

Our model checking algorithm, called L-IC3, thus integrates a lazy abstractionrefinement mechanism into IC3. Similarly to IC3, L-IC3 computes a series of over-approximating sets $F_{i}$. However, L-IC3 considers abstractions of the model during this computation. When constructing $F_{i+1}$, we determine a set of variables $U_{i}$, needed for its construction, and abstract both states and transitions accordingly. The variables in $U_{i}$ are referred to as "visible", while the others are invisible and treated as inputs.

The key ingredients of L-IC3 are therefore a series $\bar{F}$ of over-approximating sets of states $F_{i}$ and an abstraction sequence $\bar{U}$ of sets of variables $U_{i}$.

L-IC3 works in stages. Each stage consists of an abstract model checking step, followed by a refinement step. At a given stage, the abstract model checking extends both $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{U}$ and checks if they include a potential abstract counterexample. If not, the sequences are further extended. If a potential abstract counterexample is found, the algorithm strengthens the sets $F_{i}$ by eliminating abstract states that might be a part of an abstract counterexample.

We use a nonstandard notion of abstract counterexample, based on both $\bar{F}$ and $\bar{U}$. It consists of a sequence of abstract states connected by abstract transitions, satisfying:

1. each transition is based on a different abstraction $U_{i}$, and
2. each abstract state intersects the set $F_{i}$ at the corresponding time frame

Our notion of counterexample reflects the incorporation of lazy abstraction into the mechanism of computing $\bar{F}$.

If an abstract counterexample is found, meaning that no strengthening is possible anymore based on the abstractions, the refinement step is invoked. Refinement applies just one iteration of a concrete variation of IC3, on the $\bar{F}$ computed by the abstract model checking. By doing so, it either finds a concrete counterexample or strengthens the $F_{i}$ 's so that all concrete counterexamples of length $k$ are eliminated. In the latter case, the $U_{i}$ 's are also refined by adding more visible variables to each of them, as needed and where needed. Once refinement is finished we move to the next L-IC3 stage and the abstract model checking is re-invoked, continuing the computation from iteration $\mathrm{k}+1$, with the refined sequences. This makes L-IC3 incremental.

L-IC3 terminates with either a fixpoint, in which case we conclude that the system satisfies the property, or with a concrete counterexample.

In summary, the main contribution of our work is a novel lazy abstractionrefinement technique for hardware. To the best of our knowledge this is the first time lazy abstraction is considered in the context of hardware. Our abstract model checking and refinement are SAT-based. Both avoid unrolling of the transition relation.

In order to evaluate our algorithm we compared it with IC3 on a set of large industrial designs and properties. We obtained speedups of up to two orders of magnitude. Our experiments demonstrate that our lazy abstraction indeed uses different sets of variables in different time frames. Moreover, only a small portion of the design's variables are used.

### 6.0.1 Related Work

[28] and [10] suggest optimizations and extensions to IC3, but they do not combine it with a lazy abstraction-refinement mechanism ([28] suggests the use of abstraction for IC3 but without implementation details nor results). In $[45,35,32,18,33]$, SAT-based refinement is introduced. However, they use an unrolling of the model while we use local checks a-la IC3. Similarly to $[45,18]$, we also exploit an unSAT-core for refinement. However, we never unroll the model, while [45] does. Further, [45] is not incremental since after refinement it resumes its (abstract) model checking from time frame 0 .

IC3 [8] is sometimes also viewed as an abstraction-refinement algorithm, since it refers to over-approximated sets $F_{i}$ and the strengthening of these sets resembles refinement. However, the underlying model used by IC3 is concrete, and only the concrete transition relation is considered. We, on the other hand, alternate between abstract transition relations (in the abstract model checking step) and the concrete transition relation (in the refinement step). Our algorithm thus adds a layer of abstraction-refinement on top of this over-approximation-strengthening mechanism.

### 6.1 Preliminaries

In this chapter, we will use a slightly different version of a transition system than the one given in Defintion 2.0.1. In the following definition, we explicity distinguish state variables from input variables.

Definition 6.1.1. A finite state transition system (a model) is a tuple $M=$ ( $V, U, I N I T, T R$ ) where $V$ is a set of Boolean variables, $U \subseteq V$ is a set of state variables, $V \backslash U$ is a set of input variables, $\operatorname{INIT}(V)$ is a propositional formula over $V$ describing the initial states, and $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)$ describes a total transition relation which is defined as a propositional formula over $V$ and the next-state variables $V^{\prime}=\left\{v^{\prime} \mid v \in V\right\}$.

The transition relation is described using next-state functions for each state variable. Namely, $T R\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)=\bigwedge_{v \in U}\left(v^{\prime}=f_{v}\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)\right)$ where $f_{v}\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)$ is a propositional formula that assigns the next value to $v \in U$ based on current and next-state variables. Note that for an input variable $v \in V \backslash U, f_{v}$ is not defined.

Definition 6.1.2. Let $\bar{F}$ be an MFRS (recall Definition 2.4.1). A formula $\eta$ is inductive up to $j$, if $F_{j} \wedge \eta \wedge T R \Rightarrow \eta^{\prime} . \eta$ is an invariant up to level $j$ if $F_{i} \Rightarrow \eta$ holds for each $i \leq j$.

Note that if $\eta$ is inductive up to $j$ then $F_{i} \wedge \eta \wedge T R \Rightarrow \eta^{\prime}$ holds for each $i \leq j$. This follows from the monotonicity of $\bar{F}$. Further, if $\eta$ is an invariant up to $j$ then it is inductive up to level $j-1$, and in addition $F_{0} \Rightarrow \eta$ (initialization). However, the opposite implication does not necessarily hold (since the $F_{i}$ sets are over-approximate).
Definition 6.1.3. Let $\bar{F}$ be an MFRS. A formula $\eta$ is a potential invariant up to $j$, if the sequence $\bar{F}^{u}$ obtained by setting $F_{i}^{u}=F_{i} \wedge \eta$ for every $i \leq j$ and $F_{i}^{u}=F_{i}$ otherwise remains an MFRS. Note that $\eta$ is (trivially) an invariant up to $j$ w.r.t. $\bar{F}^{u}$.

Thus, a potential invariant $\eta$ can safely be used to strengthen the $F_{i}$ components, turning $\eta$ into an invariant. Using the notion of a potential invariant we can now say that $\eta$ is a potential invariant up to $j$ iff it is inductive up to level $j-1$, and in addition $F_{0} \Rightarrow \eta$ (initialization).

The algorithms discussed in this chapter use the following simple observation:

Lemma 6.1.4. Let $\bar{F}$ be an MFRS and $\eta$ a formula such that $\eta$ is an invariant up to $j-1$ and $F_{j-1} \wedge \mathrm{TR} \Rightarrow \eta^{\prime}$. Then $\eta$ is a potential invariant up to $j$.

Note that given that $\eta$ is an invariant up to $j-1$, the requirement $F_{j-1} \wedge$ $T R \Rightarrow \eta^{\prime}$ is equivalent to requiring that $\eta$ is inductive up to $j-1$ since in this case $F_{j-1} \wedge \eta \equiv F_{j-1}$.

### 6.1.1 SAT-based Reachability via IC3

IC3 [8] is a SAT-based model checking algorithm that, given a model $M$ and a property $A G p$, computes increasingly long sequences $\bar{F}(M, p)$. The algorithm works iteratively, where at iteration $k$, the MFRS of length $k+1$ is extended to an MFRS of length $k+2$ by initializing the set $F_{k+1}$ and possibly updating previous sets (with index $i \leq k+1$ ). The computation continues until either a counterexample is found or a fixpoint is reached (i.e. $F_{i+1} \Rightarrow F_{i}$ for some $i$ ).

One of the main features of IC3 is the fact that no unrolling of the transition relation is needed. We give a brief overview of how it operates. More details are given along the chapter as needed. For the exact details we refer the reader to [8].

IC3 starts by checking if $I N I T \wedge \neg p$ or $I N I T \wedge T R \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$ is satisfiable, in which case a counterexample of length zero or one is found and the algorithm terminates. If both are unsatisfiable, $F_{0}$ is initialized to INIT and $F_{1}$ is initialized to $p .\left\langle F_{0}, F_{1}\right\rangle$ is an MFRS (it satisfies the conditions in Definition 2.4.1).

IC3 extends and updates $\bar{F}$, while strengthening the $F_{i}$ 's. The $k$ th iteration starts from an MFRS $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$. Then $F_{k+1}$ is initialized to $p$. Clearly, $F_{k} \Rightarrow F_{k+1}$ and $F_{k+1} \Rightarrow p$ hold. Therefore, the purpose of strengthening is to ensure that $F_{k} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{k+1}^{\prime}$. This is done by checking that $F_{k} \wedge T R \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$ is unsatisfiable. If this formula is satisfiable then a state $s \in F_{k}$ is retrieved from the satisfying assignment. $s$ is a bad state since it reaches $\neg p$ (and by that violates $\left.F_{k} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{k+1}^{\prime}\right)$. At this point, either $s$ is reachable from INIT, in which case a counterexample exists, or $s$ is unreachable and needs to be removed from $F_{k}$. In order to determine if $s$ is reachable, IC3 checks the formula: $F_{k-1} \wedge T R \wedge s^{\prime}$. If this formula is unsatisfiable, then $s$ can be removed from $F_{k}$ (since the property $F_{k-1} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{k}^{\prime}$ of an MFRS holds without it as well), and the same process is repeated for other states in $F_{k}$ that can reach $\neg p$ (if any). However, if $F_{k-1} \wedge T R \wedge s^{\prime}$ is satisfiable, a pre-
decessor $t \in F_{k-1}$ of $s$ is extracted and handled similarly to $s$ in order to determine if $t$ (which is also a bad state) is reachable from INIT or not. IC3 therefore moves back and forth along the $F_{i}$ 's, while retrieving bad states $b$ and checking their reachability from $I N I T$ via local reachability checks of the form $F_{i} \wedge T R \wedge b^{\prime}$. During this process, the $F_{i}$ 's are strengthened by removing bad states that are not reachable ${ }^{1}$. If a state in $F_{0}=I N I T$ is reached during the backwards traversal, then a counterexample is obtained.

Definition 6.1.5. Satisfiability checks of the form $F_{i} \wedge T R \wedge \eta$ (where $\left.\operatorname{Vars}(\eta) \subseteq V \cup V^{\prime}\right)$ are called $i$-reachability checks.

### 6.1.2 Abstraction

As mentioned before, in this chapter we consider the "visible variables" abstraction [40], which is particularly suitable for hardware. Let $M_{c}=$ ( $V, U, I N I T, T R)$ be a model and let $U_{i} \subseteq U$ be a set of state-variables. We refer to $U_{i}$ as the set of "visible variables".

Given $U_{i}$, we consider an abstract model $M_{i}=\left(V_{i}, U_{i}, T R_{i}\right)$ of $M_{c}$ where $T R_{i}=\bigwedge_{v \in U_{i}}\left(v^{\prime}=f_{v}\left(V, V^{\prime}\right)\right)$ is an abstract transition relation, and $V_{i}=\{v \in$ $\left.V \mid v \in \operatorname{Vars}\left(T R_{i}\right) \vee v^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Vars}\left(T R_{i}\right)\right\} \subseteq V$. Note that the behavior of invisible state variables (in $U \backslash U_{i}$ ) is nondeterministic.

We do not introduce an abstraction of INIT as part of $M_{i}$ since we always consider the concrete set of initial states. $M_{i}$ is an abstraction of $M_{c}$, denoted $M_{c} \preceq M_{i}$, in the sense that both its set of states and its transition relation are abstractions of the concrete ones, as explained next. $M_{i}$ induces a set of abstract states $S_{i}$ which includes all valuations to $V_{i}$. Specifically, each concrete state $s \in S$ is abstracted by the abstract state $s_{i} \in S_{i}$ that agrees with $s$ on the assignment to the joint variables in $V_{i}$. In this case we write $s \preceq s_{i}$. We sometimes refer to $s_{i}$ as the set of concrete states it abstracts:

[^9]$\left\{s \in S \mid s \preceq s_{i}\right\}$.
In addition, $T R$ is abstracted by $T R_{i}$ in the sense that $T R \Rightarrow T R_{i}$. Formally, the relation $\left\{\left(s, s_{i}\right) \mid s \preceq s_{i}\right\}$ is a simulation relation from $M_{c}$ to $M_{i}$.

Given an MFRS $\bar{F}\left(M_{c}, p\right)=\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$ and an abstract model $M_{i}$, we say that a formula $\eta$ is inductive up to level $j$ w.r.t. $M_{i}$, if $F_{j} \wedge \eta \wedge T R_{i} \Rightarrow \eta^{\prime}$.

Lemma 6.1.6. Any formula inductive up to $j$ w.r.t. $M_{i}$ is also inductive up to $j$ w.r.t. $M_{c}$.

The lemma holds since $T R \Rightarrow T R_{i}$. When we do not explicitly mention a model, we refer to inductiveness w.r.t. $M_{c}$. The notion of an invariant always refers to $M_{c}$.

### 6.1.3 Lazy Abstraction

As mentioned above, lazy abstraction [36] allows to use different details of the model at different iterations of the state-space traversal. We adapt the notion of lazy abstraction to abstraction based on visible variables [40], and allow different variables to be visible at different time frames.

Definition 6.1.7. An abstraction sequence w.r.t. a model $M_{c}$ is a sequence $\bar{U}=\left\langle U_{0}, \ldots, U_{k}\right\rangle$ where $U_{i} \subseteq U$ for $0 \leq i \leq k$, is a set of visible statevariables. $\bar{U}$ is monotonic if $U_{i} \subseteq U_{i+1}$ for each $0 \leq i<k$.

An abstraction sequence $\bar{U}$ represents different levels of abstraction of $M_{c}$. It induces a sequence of abstract models $\left\langle M_{0}, \ldots, M_{k}\right\rangle$ where $M_{i}$ is defined as in Section 6.1.2. If $\bar{U}$ is monotonic, the induced sequence of abstract models is also monotonic in the sense that $M_{0} \succeq \ldots \succeq M_{k} \succeq M_{c}$.

Definition 6.1.8. Let $\bar{U}=\left\langle U_{0}, \ldots, U_{k}\right\rangle$ be a monotonic abstraction sequence and $\bar{F}\left(M_{c}, p\right)=\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$ an MFRS. A sequence $s_{i}, \ldots, s_{j}$ of abstract states where $0 \leq i<j \leq k+1$ is an abstract path from $i$ to $j$ if

1. for each $i \leq l<j-1,\left(s_{l}, s_{l+1}\right) \models T R_{l}$, and
2. for each $i \leq l \leq \min \{j, k\}, s_{l} \cap F_{l} \neq \emptyset^{2}$.

An abstract path $s_{0}, \ldots, s_{j}$ from 0 to $j$ is an abstract counterexample of length $j$ if $s_{j} \cap \neg p \neq \emptyset$.

Note that the definition above is not standard. It refers to different transition relations at different steps. Also, it requires the abstract states to be part of the corresponding $F_{i}$ in the sense that $s_{i} \cap F_{i} \neq \emptyset$. Unlike with concrete states, it is possible that $s_{i} \cap F_{i} \neq \emptyset$ but $s_{i} \nsubseteq F_{i}$. As a result we do not write $s_{i} \in F_{i}$.

Definition 6.1.9. An abstraction sequence $\left\langle U_{0}{ }^{r}, \ldots, U_{k}{ }^{r}\right\rangle$ is a refinement of an abstraction sequence $\left\langle U_{0}, \ldots, U_{k}\right\rangle$ if $U_{i} \subseteq U_{i}{ }^{r}$ for each $i$.

### 6.2 Lazy Abstraction and IC3

In this section we describe our proposed algorithm for lazy abstraction, called L-IC3. The key ingredients of L-IC3 are an abstraction sequence $\bar{U}$ that induces different abstractions at different time frames as well as an MFRS $\bar{F}$.

L-IC3 starts with an initialization step and then works in stages (Figure 6.1). Its initialization (lines 2-5) is similar to the initialization of IC3 with one exception. If no counterexample of length 0 or 1 exists, then in addition to initializing $\bar{F}$ to $\left\langle F_{0}=I N I T, F_{1}=p\right\rangle$, it initializes $\bar{U}$ to $\left\langle U_{0}=\operatorname{Vars}(p)\right\rangle$. Clearly, after initialization, $\bar{F}$ is an MFRS.

Each L-IC3 stage (lines 6-10) consists of an abstract model checking step and a refinement step, both performed by variations of IC3. $\bar{U}$ and $\bar{F}$ are updated in both steps.

[^10]```
function L-IC3( \(p\) )
    \(\bar{F}=\langle I N I T, p\rangle ; \bar{U}=\langle\operatorname{Vars}(p)\rangle\)
    if Init-IC3 \((\bar{F}, \bar{U}, p)==\) cex then
        return cex
    end if
    while A-IC3 \((\bar{F}, \bar{U})==\) abs-cex do
        if \(\operatorname{Refine}(\bar{F}, \bar{U})==\) cex then
            return cex
        end if
    end while
    return fixpoint
end function
```

Figure 6.1: L-IC3

The abstract model checking A-IC3 gradually extends and updates the MFRS $\bar{F}$ by adding $F_{i}$ sets and strengthening the components of $\bar{F}$ until either a fixpoint is reached, or an abstract counterexample is found (line 6). In the former case, the property is proved and L-IC3 terminates (line 11). In the latter case, the counterexample is abstract since it is computed w.r.t. the abstract transitions. However, it is also restricted by $\bar{F}$ (see Definition 6.1.8). A refinement is then performed (line 7). If the refinement finds a concrete counterexample then it terminates. Otherwise it refines $\bar{U}$ and updates $\bar{F}$ into an MFRS (of the same length). A new L-IC3 stage (line 6) of abstractionrefinement then begins, invoking A-IC3 with the updated $\bar{F}$ and the refined $\bar{U}$.

Both the abstract model checking and the refinement update the components of the MFRS, however only the abstract model checking extends it by adding sets. The abstract model checking step also adds new components to the abstraction sequence when needed, but they are simply initialized to the last component in the sequence. Existing components of the abstraction sequence are updated (refined) only by the refinement.

Altogether, an invocation of L-IC3 results in either a fixpoint (in which
case the property is proved) or a concrete counterexample.

Iterations of L-IC3 The stages of L-IC3 should not be confused with the iterations of IC3 as a stage may extend $\bar{F}$ by more than one set. Similarly to IC3, we define an iteration of L-IC3 to include the effort involved in the extension of $\bar{F}$ by one set. In iteration $k, \bar{F}$ is extended from $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$ to $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}, F_{k+1}\right\rangle$. If no abstract counterexample is found, the iteration is performed in full by A-IC3. In fact, several iterations can be performed by a single invocation of A-IC3 (within a single stage of L-IC3), extending $\bar{F}$ by several sets (as long as no abstract counterexample is found). When an abstract counterexample is found, the corresponding iteration that starts at A-IC3 continues at the refinement step.

### 6.2.1 Abstract Model Checking via A-IC3

The abstract model checking algorithm, A-IC3 (Figure 6.2), either finds an abstract counterexample (line 22), or reaches a fixpoint (line 26) by computing an MFRS $\bar{F}$.
Using different abstractions The computation of $\bar{F}$ is done using a variation of IC3 which considers a sequence of abstract models, induced by a monotonic abstraction sequence $\bar{U}=\left\langle U_{0} \ldots, U_{k}\right\rangle$. A-IC3 uses the abstraction sequence $\bar{U}$ and extends it as necessary, but does not change its existing components. Both abstract transition relations and abstract states are used.

Recall that IC3 performs $i$-reachability checks of the form $F_{i} \wedge T R \wedge \eta$. A-IC3 also performs these checks (within Strengthen, line 20), but instead of using the concrete $T R$ it uses the abstract $T R_{i}$. This means that when traversing the model's state space, A-IC3 uses different abstract transition relations at different time frames. Further, when $F_{i} \wedge T R_{i} \wedge \eta$ is satisfiable, A-IC3 retrieves an abstract state $s_{a} \in M_{i}$ from the satisfying assignment. This abstract state is either used to strengthen $\bar{F}$, or it is part of an abstract counterexample.

```
function \(\operatorname{A-IC3}(\bar{F}, \bar{U})\)
    \(k=|\bar{F}|-1\)
    while \(\bar{F}\).fixpoint ()\(==\) false do
        \(U_{k}=U_{k-1}\)
        \(\bar{U} \cdot \operatorname{add}\left(U_{k}\right)\)
        \(F_{k+1}=p\)
        \(\bar{F} \cdot \operatorname{add}\left(F_{k+1}\right)\)
        result \(=\operatorname{Strengthen}(\bar{F}, \bar{U}, k)\)
        if result \(==\) abs-cex then
                return abs-cex
        end if
        \(k=k+1\)
    end while
    return fixpoint
end function
```

Figure 6.2: A-IC3

On the other hand, when A-IC3 strengthens some set $F_{i+1}$ by adding to it a clause $c$ which is initial (i.e. $F_{0} \Rightarrow c$ ) and inductive at $M_{i}$ up to $i$, i.e. $F_{i} \wedge c \wedge T R_{i} \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$, then the clause $c$ is added to all $F_{j}$ such that $j \leq i$, even though it might not be inductive w.r.t. to $T R_{j}$. The justification is that $c$ is inductive w.r.t. the concrete model (as $T R \Rightarrow T R_{i}$ ). As a result, even though abstract models are used, the obtained MFRS satisfies the requirements of Definition 2.4.1, which refer to the concrete transition relation $T R$. It does not necessarily satisfy the requirements of Definition 2.4.1 w.r.t. the abstract transition relations. To emphasize this, we sometimes refer to the sequence as a concrete MFRS.

Incrementality A-IC3 is an iterative algorithm. The iterations of L-IC3 and A-IC3 coincide, except that when an abstract counterexample is found, an iteration of L-IC3 consists of an iteration of A-IC3 followed by refinement. If A-IC3 finds a counterexample at iteration $k$ it returns. After refinement (line 7) A-IC3 is re-invoked with an updated $\bar{F}$ that is an MFRS of the same
length. The computation of $\bar{F}$ resumes from iteration $k+1$ (line 14) ${ }^{3}$.
Iterations In iteration $k \geq 1$, the $\operatorname{MFRS}\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$ and the abstraction sequence $\left\langle U_{0}, \ldots, U_{k-1}\right\rangle$ are extended by 1 and updated as follows (see Figure 6.2).

1. Check if a fixpoint is reached. If not:
2. $U_{k}$ is initialized to $U_{k-1}$ and added to $\bar{U}$.
3. $F_{k+1}$ is initialized to $p$ and added to $\bar{F}$.
4. The sets $F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k+1}$ are strengthened iteratively until $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k+1}\right\rangle$ becomes an MFRS, or an abstract counterexample is found.

Note that if no counterexample is found, then an iteration of A-IC3 and an iteration of L-IC3 coincide. However, if an abstract counterexample is found, then the corresponding iteration of L-IC3 includes the iteration of A-IC3 as well as the following refinement step.

Below we describe items 2 and 4 in more detail.
(2) Extending $\overline{\mathbf{U}}: U_{k}$ is initialized to $U_{k-1}$ (line 16). This is aimed at immediately eliminating from $T R_{k}$ spurious transitions that lead from states in $F_{k-1} \subseteq F_{k}$ to $\neg p$ and were already removed from $T R_{k-1}$. Note that this initialization does not imply that the $U_{i}$ sets will always be equal, since refinement might change them in different ways.
(4) Iterative Strengthening of $\overline{\mathbf{F}}$ : At the beginning of the iteration, $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$ is a concrete MFRS. However, the addition of $F_{k+1}=p$ might cause the implication $F_{k} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{k+1}$ not to hold. When considering the abstract models and transition relations (as does A-IC3) this means that $F_{k} \wedge T R_{k} \Rightarrow F_{k+1}$ does not hold, i.e., there exists a bad abstract state at $F_{k}$ that reaches $\neg F_{k+1}=\neg p$. To ensure that $F_{k} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{k+1}$, A-IC3 attempts to eliminate this state from $F_{k}$ (even if in fact it only violates the abstract

[^11]implication and not the concrete one). To do so, A-IC3 first makes sure that there is no abstract predecessor of the bad state in $F_{k-1}$. If there is one, then A-IC3 also tries to eliminate it since it contradicts the implication $F_{k-1} \wedge T R_{k-1} \Rightarrow F_{k}$ (and hence potentially violates $F_{k-1} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{k}$ ), and so on. Each of these states is also a bad abstract state that reaches $\neg p$ along an abstract path in $F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}$. In this sense, A-IC3 obtains an MFRS of length $k+1$ by strengthening the $F_{i}$ 's to exclude bad abstract states that reach $\neg p$ along an abstract path in $F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}$. A sequence of such bad states of length $k+1$ is an abstract counterexample of length $k+1$.

A-IC3 can also be viewed as trying to eliminate all (suffixes) of abstract counterexamples of length $k+1$ w.r.t. $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$. From this point of view, A-IC3 identifies abstract states that might be a part of an abstract counterexample at a certain time frame, and attempts to block them by learning corresponding invariants. Recall that the abstract counterexamples we consider are restricted not only by the abstract transition relations, but also by the $F_{i}$ sets (Definition 6.1.7).

Technically, bad abstract states are described by abstract proof obligations (similarly to the notion of proof obligations used in IC3).

Definition 6.2.1. An abstract proof obligation, or an obligation in short, is a pair $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ consisting of a level $n \leq k$ and an abstract state $s_{a}$ such that

1. $s_{a}$ is a "bad state" that reaches $\neg p$ along some abstract path,
2. $\neg s_{a}$ is an invariant up until $n$,
3. $s_{a} \cap F_{n+1} \neq \emptyset$, and
4. $F_{n}$ reaches $s_{a}$ in one step of $T R_{n}$.

Thus $n+1$ is the minimal level intersecting $s_{a}$, and $F_{n}$ reaches $s_{a}$ in one abstract step. Note that it is possible that $F_{n}$ cannot reach $s_{a}$ along the concrete transitions. A-IC3 maintains two sets of obligations - may and must.

Definition 6.2.2. An obligation $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ is a must obligation w.r.t. iteration $k$ if $s_{a}$ must be shown unreachable from $F_{n}$ in one step w.r.t. $T R_{n}$, in order to ensure that no abstract counterexample of length $k+1$ exists. All other obligations are may obligations w.r.t. $k$.

If $s_{a}$ can reach $\neg p$ via an abstract path from level $n+1$ to level $k+1$, then $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ is a must obligation: unless $s_{a}$ is blocked from $F_{n+1}$ (by removing from $F_{n}$ all states that reach $s_{a}$ in one step), an abstract counterexample of length $k+1$ would exist. The same violation may also be reached from $s_{a}$ in later levels $F_{j}, n+1<j \leq k+1$, in which case it will be a suffix of a longer abstract counterexample with a longer prefix up to $s_{a}$. Therefore, we may also want to block $s_{a}$ in $F_{j}, n+1<j \leq k+1$. However, since different abstract transition relations are considered at each level, it is also possible that the same path leading from $s_{a}$ to $\neg p$ is not valid from level $j>n+1$ since, for example, $U_{j} \supset U_{n+1}$ and hence the first transition along the path does not satisfy $T R_{j}$. In this case, a longer counterexample is not a valid abstract path since its suffix is not valid. The attempt to block a state $s_{a}$ that is known to reach a violation from level $n+1$ in levels greater than $n+1$ creates may obligations ${ }^{4}$.

The may obligations are not required to be blocked, but blocking them can prevent A-IC3 from encountering the same obligations/states in future iterations. On the other hand, if we report an abstract counterexample based on a may obligation, it is possible that no real abstract counterexample exists, resulting in an unnecessary refinement step which can damage the efficiency of the algorithm. We therefore greedily try to handle may obligations and strengthen $\bar{F}$ accordingly, but refrain from reporting abstract counterexamples based on them. Note that in the latter case, if the may obligation is in fact a must w.r.t. some greater $k$, then it will reappear as a must obligation in the following iterations.

[^12]In order to handle an obligation $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ and show $s_{a}$ to be unreachable from $F_{n}$ in one step, A-IC3 attempts to strengthen $F_{n}$ by extracting predecessors $t_{a}$ of $s_{a}$ that satisfy $F_{n} \wedge T R_{n} \wedge s_{a}^{\prime}$, defining new proof obligations based on them, and handling these obligations (by the same procedure). If $F_{n}$ is successfully strengthened s.t. $F_{n} \wedge T R_{n} \wedge s_{a}^{\prime}$ becomes unsatisfiable, then $\neg s_{a}$ becomes an invariant up to $n+1 . s_{a}$ is blocked by strengthening $F_{0}, \ldots, F_{n+1}$ accordingly.

Key procedures used by A-IC3 are described in Section 6.2.2.

### 6.2.2 Detailed Description of Strengthening

We now describe the procedures used by A-IC3 in detail.

## Strengthen (Figure 6.3)

Strengthen starts by checking $F_{k} \wedge T R_{k} \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$ (line 29). If it is unsatisfiable, then $F_{k} \wedge T R \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$ is unsatisfiable as well (since $T R \Rightarrow T R_{k}$ ). Thus $\bar{F}$ is already an MFRS and no further strengthening is needed.

Assume $F_{k} \wedge T R_{k} \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$ is satisfiable. An abstract state $s_{a} \in M_{k}$ that reaches $\neg p$ in one abstract step is extracted from the satisfying assignment, meaning $s_{a} \cap F_{k} \neq \emptyset$. All concrete states in $s_{a} \cap F_{k}$ can reach $\neg p$ via $T R_{k}$ and therefore, if the property is to be proven, $s_{a}$ must be blocked in $F_{k}$. Otherwise, an abstract counterexample exists.

In order to block $s_{a}$ in $F_{k}$, Strengthen calls BlockState on the bad state $s_{a}$ at level $k$ (line 32).

Lemma 6.2.3. $s_{a}$ satisfies the requirements of BlockState at level $k$.
Proof. Clearly, $s_{a}$ is a "bad state" at level $k$ as it reaches $\neg p$ in one abstract step and $s_{a} \cap F_{k} \neq \emptyset$, since $s_{a}$ was retrieved from a satisfying assignment to $F_{k} \wedge T R_{k} \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$, i.e. a satisfying assignment to $F_{k}$. Furthermore, $\neg s_{a}$ is an invariant up to $k-1$, otherwise the same violation would have been found and eliminated in the previous iteration.

```
function Strengthen \((\bar{F}, \bar{U}, k)\)
    while \(F_{k} \wedge T R_{k} \wedge \neg p^{\prime}==S A T\) do
        obligations \(=\emptyset\)
        retrieve abstract predecessor \(s_{k}\)
        if BlockState \(\left(\bar{F}, s_{k}, k, k\right.\),must \()==\) abs-cex then
            return abs-cex
        end if
        while obligations \(\neq \emptyset\) do
            \(\left(\left(s_{a}, n\right)\right.\), handleMay \()=\) Choosenext(obligations)
            if \(F_{n} \wedge T R_{n} \wedge s_{a}^{\prime}==\) SAT then
                    retrieve abstract predecessor \(t_{n}\)
                        if \(\operatorname{BlockState}\left(\bar{F}, t_{n}, n, k\right.\),must \()==\) abs-cex then
                        if handleMay then
                            obligations.clearAllMust()
                            else
                            return abs-cex
                                end if
                end if
            else
                        obligations.removeMust \(\left(s_{a}, n\right)\)
                BlockState \(\left(\bar{F}, s_{a}, n+2, k\right.\), may \()\)
            end if
        end while
    end while
    \(\operatorname{PropagateClauses}(\bar{F})\)
    return done
end function
```

Figure 6.3: Iterative strengthening of A-IC3

BlockState either finds a counterexample or initializes the set(s) of obligations to reflect the need to block $s_{a}$ (and possibly adds invariants to the $F_{i}$ 's).

Strengthen then handles the proof obligations one at a time. Choosenext (line 36) first considers obligations from the must set only. Obligations are chosen in increasing order of their time frames. If the must set becomes empty, then as long as the may set is not empty, one may obligation with a minimal time frame is moved from the may set to the must set. Strengthen then continues, with the exception that counterexamples are no longer reported.

Given a proof obligation $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ :

- If $F_{n}$ can indeed reach $s_{a}$ in one (abstract) step, i.e., $F_{n} \wedge T R_{n} \wedge s_{a}^{\prime}$ is satisfiable, then a predecessor $t_{a}$ of $s_{a}$ s.t. $t_{a} \cap F_{n} \neq \emptyset$ is extracted from the satisfying assignment (line 38). By Lemma 6.2.4 (see below), $t_{a} \cap F_{i}=\emptyset$ for all $i<n$. Thus $\neg t_{a}$ is an invariant up to $n-1$. Next, the state $t_{a}$ needs to be blocked (eliminated) from level $l=n$ (line 39).
- When $F_{n} \wedge T R_{n} \wedge s_{a}^{\prime}$ becomes unsatisfiable, the proof obligation $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ is removed (line 47) since $s_{a}$ can no longer be reached from level $n$. In fact, $\neg s_{a}$ is now a potential invariant up to level $n+1$ (see Lemma 6.2.6 below).In order not to encounter $s_{a}$ in later iterations, we speculatively attempt to block (eliminate) $s_{a}$ from level $l=n+2$, while using the may parameter (line 48). The call to BlockState also adds $\neg s_{a}$ (or a stronger clause) as an invariant (line 71).

Lemma 6.2.4. Let $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ be a proof obligation, and let $t_{a}$ be an abstract state such that $\left(t_{a}, s_{a}\right) \models \mathrm{TR}_{n}$. Then $t_{a} \cap F_{i}=\emptyset$ for every $i \leq n-1$.

Proof. Let $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ be a proof obligation. In particular, $s_{a} \cap F_{n+1} \neq \emptyset$. Suppose further that $\left(t_{a}, s_{a}\right) \models T R_{n}$. We show that $t_{a} \cap F_{i}=\emptyset$ for every $i \leq n-1$. Since $F_{i} \subseteq F_{n-1}$ for every $i \leq n-1$, it suffices to show that $t_{a} \cap F_{n-1}=\emptyset$.

At the beginning of the $n-1$ 'th L-IC3-iteration (which added $F_{n}$ ), it was the case that $s_{a} \cap F_{n} \neq \emptyset$. This is because $F_{n}$ was initialized to $p$, and clearly $s_{a} \cap p \neq \emptyset$ (since $F_{n+1} \subseteq p$ and $s_{a} \cap F_{n+1} \neq \emptyset$ ). On the other hand, at the current L-IC3-iteration $s_{a} \cap F_{n}=\emptyset$, since for a proof obligation $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$, $\neg s_{a}$ is an invariant up to $n$.

This means that there is a set of clauses $C$ that were added to $F_{n}$ such that $p \cap \cap C \cap s_{a}=\emptyset$ and for every $c \in C, s_{a} \nsubseteq c$ or equivalently $s_{a} \cap \neg c \neq \emptyset$ (other clauses are not considered as they do not contribute to blocking $s_{a}$ anyway). Every clause $c$ added to $F_{n}$ is inductive at some time frame $\geq n-1$ (see Lemma ??). Therefore, for every $c \in C$ there is a frame $i_{c} \geq n-1$ such that $F_{i_{c}} \wedge c \wedge T R_{i_{c}} \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$. Furthermore, since $s_{a} \cap F_{n+1} \neq \emptyset$, at least one of these clauses was not added to $F_{n+1}$ which ensures that there is some $c \in C$ such that $i_{c} \leq n-1$ (recall that when $c$ is inductive at $i_{c}$ it is added up to $i_{c}+1$ ), i.e. $i_{c}=n-1$. We denote such a clause by $c_{0}$. We have that $F_{n-1} \wedge c_{0} \wedge T R_{n-1} \Rightarrow c_{0}^{\prime}$, or equivalently $F_{n-1} \wedge c_{0} \wedge T R_{n-1} \wedge \neg c_{0}^{\prime}==U N S A T$.

Now assume to the contrary that $t_{a} \cap F_{n-1} \neq \emptyset$. To reach a contradiction we first note that since $\left(t_{a}, s_{a}\right) \models T R_{n}$, it is also the case that $\left(t_{a}, s_{a}\right) \models$ $T R_{n-1}$. Therefore by our assumption we have that $\left(t_{a}, s_{a}\right) \models F_{n-1} \wedge T R_{n-1} \equiv$ $F_{n-1} \wedge c_{0} \wedge T R_{n-1}$. The equivalence is since $c_{0}$ is a clause in $F_{n-1}$. Together with the property that $s_{a} \cap \neg c_{0} \neq \emptyset$ (since $c_{0} \in C$ and by the choice of $C$ ), we have that $\left(t_{a}, s_{a}\right)$ is a satisfying assignment for $F_{n-1} \wedge c_{0} \wedge T R_{n-1} \wedge \neg c_{0}^{\prime}$, in contradiction to the property that it is UNSAT.

Lemma 6.2.5. Let $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ be a proof obligation, and let $t_{a}$ be an abstract state such that $\left(t_{a}, s_{a}\right) \models \mathrm{TR}_{n}$. Then $t_{a}$ satisfies the requirements of BLockState from level $l=n$.

Proof. First, $t_{a}$ is a "bad state" at level $n$ as it reaches $s_{a}$ in one abstract step and $s_{a}$ itself, being a part of a proof obligation, is a "bad state" that reaches $\neg p$ along an abstract path. In addition, $t_{a} \cap F_{n} \neq \emptyset$, since $t_{a}$ was retrieved from a satisfying assignment to $F_{n} \wedge T R_{n} \wedge s_{a}^{\prime}$, i.e. a satisfying assignment to $F_{n}$. Last, by Lemma 6.2.4 $\neg t_{a}$ is an invariant up to $n-1$.

```
function BlockState \(\left(\bar{F}, t_{a}, l, k, t y p e\right)\)
    if \(l>k+1\) then
        \(\min =k+1\)
    else
        \(\min =\operatorname{FindNonInductive}\left(\bar{F}, \neg t_{a}, l-1, k\right)\)
        if \(\min ==0\) then
            return abs-cex
        end if
        if \(\min \leq k\) then
                if type \(==\) must \(\& \& \min ==1-1\) then
                obligations.addMust \(\left(t_{a}, \min \right)\)
            else
                obligations.addMay \(\left(t_{a}, \min \right)\)
            end if
        end if
    end if
    AddInvariant \(\left(\bar{F}, \neg t_{a}, \min \right)\)
    return done
end function
```

Figure 6.4: BlockState procedure of A-IC3

Lemma 6.2.6. Let $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ be a proof obligation. If $F_{n} \wedge \mathrm{TR}_{n} \wedge s_{a}^{\prime}$ becomes unsatisfiable then $s_{a}$ satisfies the requirements of BLockState from level $l=n+2$.

Proof. First, $s_{a}$ is a "bad state" at level $n+2$ as it reaches $\neg p$ in one abstract step of $T R_{n}$ (but not necessarily of $T R_{n+2}$, which is why the may flag is used) and $s_{a} \cap F_{n+2} \neq \emptyset$, since $s_{a} \cap F_{n+1} \neq \emptyset$ (recall that $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ is a proof obligation) and $F_{n+1} \Rightarrow F_{n+2}$. Furthermore, by Lemma 6.1.4 since $\neg s_{a}$ is an invariant up to $n$ (as a proof obligation) and $F_{n} \wedge T R_{n} \wedge s_{a}^{\prime}$ becomes unsatisfiable, then $\neg s_{a}$ is a potential invariant up to $n+1$.

As explained above, a counterexample found by BlockState is reported by Strengthen iff may obligations are not yet handled (lines 33 and 43).

Remark 1. Note that ignoring a counterexample reported by BlockState when it failed to block a may obligation $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$ does not compromise the correctness of the algorithm, since an MFRS up to level $k+1$ is still obtained.

Moreover, if $s_{a}$ does reach a violation from level $n+1$, which means that the same obligation is in fact required for the property to hold, then it will reappear as a must obligation in the following iterations. In fact, even if the abstract counterexample is a real abstract counterexample, it might be worth while to defer handling it. This is because it is possible that in later iterations, where the abstraction becomes more precise, it will cease to exist, whereas a pre-mature invocation of refinement, which traverses the concrete state apace restricted by the $F_{i}$ 's, might be costly.

## BlockState (Figure 6.4)

BlockState ( $\left.\bar{F}, t_{a}, l, k, t y p e\right)$ is used for blocking a "bad state" $t_{a}$ from level $l$ (i.e. $t_{a} \cap F_{l} \neq \emptyset$ ) up to $k+1$, where $\neg t_{a}$ is already known to be a potential invariant up to $l-1 . t_{a}$ is a "bad state" as at reaches $\neg p$ along some abstract path, however this path might not be from level $l$, in which case the may flag is used.

Note that if $l>k+1$ (line 57) then $t_{a}$ is already blocked up to $k+1$. Thus $\neg t_{a}$ is added as an invariant up to $k+1$ (line 71). Otherwise, BlockState looks for a level such that $\neg t_{a}$ is a potential invariant up to it.

Specifically, BlockState looks for the minimal level min between $l-1$ and $k$ s.t. $F_{\text {min }} \wedge T R_{\min } \wedge t_{a}^{\prime}$ is satisfiable (line 59) (meaning that $t_{a}$ can be reached in one step from $\min$ ). The important property is that $\neg t_{a}$ is a potential invariant up to $\min$ : If $\min =l-1$, this holds since $\neg t_{a}$ is already known to be a potential invariant up to level $l-1$ (this is also why the search for $\min$ starts at $l-1$ ). If $\min >l-1$, then the fact that $F_{\min -1} \wedge T R_{\min -1} \wedge t_{a}^{\prime}$ is unsatisfiable implies that $\neg t_{a}$ is inductive at $\min -1$ w.r.t. $M_{\min -1}$, and hence, by Lemma 6.1.6 also w.r.t. $M_{c}$. Thus, it is a potential invariant up to min .

If $\min =0$, then the "bad state" $t_{a}$ is reachable from $I N I T$ in one step of $T R_{0}$. Thus, an abstract counterexample is reported (line 61). If $\min =k+1$ then no corresponding level was found up to $k$, i.e., $\neg t_{a}$ is a potential invariant
up to $k+1$ and no new proof obligation is added. However, if $\min \leq k$ is found then the pair $\left(t_{a}, \min \right)$ is added as a new proof obligation (lines 64-68). Either way, $\neg t_{a}$ is added as an invariant up to min by calling AddInvariant (line 71). AddInvariant learns an invariant that strengthens $\neg t_{a}$ and adds it to $F_{0}, \ldots, F_{\min }$.

Lemma 6.2.7. If min $\leq k$ is found then the pair $\left(t_{a}, \min \right)$ is a proof obligation.

Proof. By Definition 6.2.1, we need to show that:

1. $t_{a}$ is a "bad state" that reaches $\neg p$ along some abstract path,
2. $\neg t_{a}$ is an invariant up until min,
3. $t_{a} \cap F_{\min +1} \neq \emptyset$, and
4. $F_{\text {min }}$ reaches $t_{a}$ in one step of $T R_{\text {min }}$

Item 1 is a property of the input $t_{a}$ of BlockState. Items 2 and 4 hold by the choice of min, as explained above, with the addition that AddInvariant is called turning $\neg t_{a}$ from a potential invariant to an actual invariant up to min. Finally, $t_{a} \cap F_{l} \neq \emptyset$ (as a property of the inputs of BlockState). In addition, $\min \geq l-1$ (by the choice of $\min$ ), therefore $F_{\min +1} \supseteq F_{l}$ and hence item 3 holds.

Classifying obligations as may/must is performed in lines 64-68 of BLockState. Note that only obligations of the form $\left(t_{a}, l-1\right)$ are must obligations. The initial obligations generated by the call BlockState ( $\bar{F}, s_{a}, k, k$, must $)$ in line 32 of Strengthen whose level is exactly $k-1$ become must obligations. Later on, only obligations of the form $\left(t_{a}, n-1\right)$ generated by the call to BlockState ( $\bar{F}, t_{a}, n, k$, must) in line 39 of Strengthen when handling a must obligation $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$, where $t_{a}$ is a predecessor of $s_{a}$, are considered must obligations. The rest are may obligations.

## AddInvariant

If for some state $t_{a}$ and some level $\min \leq k+1$, the formula $\neg t_{a}$ is a potential invariant up to level min, then AddInvariant (called from BlockState line 71) is used to add a strengthening of $\neg t_{a}$ to all $F_{j}$ 's s.t. $j \leq \min$. More precisely, $\neg t_{a}$ is strengthened to some subclause ${ }^{5} c$ s.t. $F_{0} \Rightarrow c$ and $F_{\text {min }-1} \wedge c \wedge T R_{\text {min-1 }} \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$, i.e. $c$ is inductive w.r.t. $M_{\text {min }-1}$ and hence, by Lemma 6.1.6, also w.r.t. $M_{c}$. Consequently, $c$ is also a potential invariant up to $\min$, but it is a stronger invariant than $\neg t_{a}\left(\right.$ since $\left.c \Rightarrow \neg t_{a}\right)$. The clause $c$ is added as a conjunct to $F_{0}, \ldots, F_{\min }$ while maintaining the properties of a (concrete) MFRS ${ }^{6}$. AddInvariant always finds a clause to add, since $\neg t_{a}$ itself satisfies the requirements.

Lemma 6.2.8. Let $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$ be an MFRS. Let $n \leq k$ and let $c$ be a clause that is inductive up to $n+1$ w.r.t. $M_{c}$. If $F_{0} \Rightarrow c$ and if $F_{i}^{*}=F_{i} \wedge c$ for $i \leq n+1$ and $F_{i}^{*}=F_{i}$ otherwise, then $c$ is an invariant up to $n+1$ and $\left\langle F_{0}^{*}, \ldots, F_{k}^{*}\right\rangle$ is also an MFRS.

Proof. $c$ is inductive up to $n+1$ w.r.t. $M_{c}$. Therefore, it follows that $F_{i} \wedge$ $c \wedge T R \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$ for $0 \leq i \leq n$. Let us define $\left\langle F_{0}^{*}, \ldots, F_{k}^{*}\right\rangle$ s.t. $F_{i}^{\prime}=F_{i} \wedge c$ for $i \leq n+1$ and $F_{i}^{*}=F_{i}$ otherwise. Since $F_{0} \Rightarrow c, F_{0}^{*} \equiv F_{0}$. Using the fact that $F_{i} \wedge c \wedge T R \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$ for $0 \leq i \leq n$, we get that $F_{i}^{*} \wedge T R \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$ for $0 \leq i \leq n$. From this it follows that $\left\langle F_{0}^{*}, \ldots, F_{k}^{*}\right\rangle$ is a MFRS. By the definition of $F_{i}^{*}$, it follows directly that $F_{i}^{*} \Rightarrow c$ for $0 \leq i \leq n+1$ and thus $c$ is an invariant up to $n+1$.

[^13]```
function Refine \((\bar{F}, \bar{U})\)
    result \(=\) C-Strengthen \((\bar{F})\)
    if result \(==\) cex then
        return cex
    end if
    RefineAbstraction \((\bar{F}, \bar{U})\)
    return done
end function
```

Figure 6.5: Refine procedure of A-IC3

## PropagateClauses

Similarly to IC3, if the main loop in Strengthen terminates, added clauses are propagated forward by PropagateClauses (line 52). Specifically, if $F_{i} \wedge c \wedge T R_{i} \wedge \neg c^{\prime}$ is unsatisfiable then the clause $c$ from $F_{i}$ can safely be added to $F_{i+1}$ while maintaining the properties of an MFRS. This is done in order to get to a fixpoint.

### 6.2.3 Refinement

If A-IC3 finds an abstract counterexample of length $k+1$, refinement is invoked by L-IC3 (line 7). Refinement either finds a concrete counterexample or eliminates all concrete spurious counterexamples of length $k+1$. In the latter case, refinement also refines $\bar{U}$ to ensure that no abstract counterexample of length $k+1$ existsBoth an updated MFRS $\bar{F}^{r}=\left\langle F_{0}^{r}, \ldots, F_{k+1}^{r}\right\rangle$ and a refined monotonic abstraction sequence $\bar{U}^{r}=\left\langle U_{0}^{r}, \ldots, U_{k}^{r}\right\rangle$ are returned.

The Refine procedure is described in Figure 6.5. Refine first invokes C-Strengthen, the strengthening procedure of the concrete IC3, on the sequence $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k+1}\right\rangle$ (whose prefix up to $F_{k}$ is an MFRS) obtained from the abstract model checking. If a concrete counterexample is found the algorithm terminates (lines 75-78). Otherwise, no concrete counterexample of length $k+1$ exists. Moreover, the updated (strengthened) sets $F_{0}^{r}, \ldots, F_{k+1}^{r}$ comprise an MFRS. It remains to refine the abstraction sequence $\bar{U}$ in or-
der to eliminate all abstract counterexamples of length $k+1$ as well. Thus, RefineAbstraction is invoked (line 79).

## RefineAbstraction

A-IC3 found an abstract counterexample since it failed to strengthen the $F_{i}$ 's. Meaning, the relevant $i$-reachability checks $F_{i} \wedge T R_{i} \wedge t_{a}^{\prime}\left(\right.$ or $\left.F_{k} \wedge T R_{k} \wedge \neg p^{\prime}\right)$ could not be made unsatisfiable when using $T R_{i}$. C-Strengthen, on the other hand, succeeds to do so. Namely, for each $i$-satisfiability check $F_{i} \wedge$ $T R_{i} \wedge t_{a}^{\prime}\left(\right.$ resp. $\left.F_{k} \wedge T R_{k} \wedge \neg p^{\prime}\right)$ of A-IC3 that was satisfiable, C-Strengthen manages to make the corresponding check $F_{i}^{r} \wedge T R \wedge t^{\prime}$ for each $t \preceq t_{a}$ (resp. $F_{k}^{r} \wedge T R \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$ ) unsatisfiable, either by strengthening $F_{i}^{r}$ or simply since it considers $T R$. Moreover, once $F_{i}^{r} \wedge T R \wedge t^{\prime}$ becomes unsatisfiable, CStrengthen derives from it a clause $c \Rightarrow \neg t$ s.t. $c$ is inductive up to $i$, i.e. $F_{i}^{r} \wedge c \wedge T R \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$ holds. C-Strengthen strengthens $\bar{F}^{r}$ by adding $c$ (invariant) as a new clause in all sets up to $F_{i+1}^{r}$. We consider it a learned clause at level $i+1$. To handle clauses that were propagated forward, we consider them learned clauses at the highest level in which they were added (instead of at the level in which they were actually learned). Recall that propagation to level $i+1$ also takes place only after checking that the clause is inductive up to $i$. The purpose of RefineAbstraction is to ensure that for a learned clause $c$ at level $i+1, F_{i}^{r} \wedge c \wedge T R_{i}^{r} \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$ (with $T R_{i}^{r}$ instead of $T R$ ) also holds. Meaning, $c$ is inductive up to $i$ w.r.t. (the refined) $M_{i}^{r}$.

Lemma 6.2.9. Let c be a clause learned by C-Strengthen at level $i+1$. If $F_{i}^{r} \wedge \mathrm{TR}_{i}^{r} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{r}{ }^{\prime}$ then $F_{i}^{r} \wedge c \wedge \mathrm{TR}_{i}^{r} \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$.

Proof. Consider a learned clause $c$ at level $i+1$. Assume that $F_{i}^{r} \wedge T R_{i}^{r} \Rightarrow$ $F_{i+1}^{r}{ }^{\prime}$. Since $c$ is a learned clause at level $i+1$, then by the property of IC3, $c$ was added to both $F_{i}^{r}$ and $F_{i+1}^{r}$. As a result, it holds that $F_{i}^{r} \wedge c \equiv F_{i}^{r}$ and $F_{i+1}^{r} \Rightarrow c$. Therefore, we have that $F_{i}^{r} \wedge c \wedge T R_{i}^{r} \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$.

Based on the previous lemma, in order to ensure $F_{i}^{r} \wedge c \wedge T R_{i}^{r} \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$, it
suffices to ensure unsatisfiability of $F_{i}^{r} \wedge T R_{i}^{r} \wedge \neg F_{i+1}^{r}{ }^{\prime}$ for every level $i+1$ in which learned clauses exist.

In addition, to handle the possibility that $F_{k} \wedge T R_{k} \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$ is satisfiable while $F_{k} \wedge T R \wedge \neg p^{\prime}$ is unsatisfiable (without any strengthening), refinement also makes sure that $F_{k}^{r} \wedge T R_{i}^{r} \wedge \neg F_{k+1}^{r}{ }^{\prime}$ becomes unsatisfiable. This addresses the case where an abstract counterexample was reported, however the last abstract transition along the counterexample admits no corresponding concrete transition, hence refinement does not update the MFRS (i.e., $F_{i}^{r}=F_{i}$ for every $0 \leq i \leq k+1$ ) and no learned clauses exist.

To ensure unsatisfiability of a formula $F_{i}^{r} \wedge T R_{i}^{r} \wedge \neg F_{i+1}^{r}{ }^{\prime}$, we consider the same formula over $T R$, which is clearly unsatisfiable. We derive from it an unSAT-core. The next-state variables that appear in the unSAT-core, denoted $N S$ (unSatCore) $=\left\{v \in V \mid v^{\prime} \in \operatorname{Vars}(\right.$ UnSatCore) $\}$, are added to $U_{i}$.

Lemma 6.2.10. Let $F_{i}^{r} \wedge \mathrm{TR} \wedge \eta^{\prime}$ be an unsatisfiable formula and let UnSatCore be its unsat core. Let $U_{i}^{r} \supseteq N S($ UnSatCore $)$. Then $F_{i}^{r} \wedge \mathrm{TR}_{i}^{r} \wedge \eta^{\prime}$ is unsatisfiable.

Finally, we propagate variables that were added to $U_{i}^{r}$ forward in order to obtain a monotonic abstraction sequence. Since we only add variables to $U_{i}^{r}$, i.e. make the transition relation $T R_{i}^{r}$ more precise, then the corresponding formulas remain unsatisfiable.

As an immediate conclusion of Lemma 6.2.9 and Lemma 6.2.10, the refinement of $\bar{U}$ ensures the following property which is important for the correctness of the algorithm:

Lemma 6.2.11. Let $\bar{F}^{r}=\left\langle F_{0}^{r}, \ldots, F_{k+1}^{r}\right\rangle$ be the updated MFRS, and let $\bar{U}^{r}=\left\langle U_{0}^{r}, \ldots, U_{k}^{r}\right\rangle$ be the refined abstraction sequence. Then, for any clause c that was added to the MFRS, if c was learned at level $i+1$ then $c$ is inductive up to $i$ w.r.t. (the refined) $M_{i}^{r}$.

### 6.2.4 Correctness Arguments

The MFRS obtained by L-IC3 is concrete. Specifically, it does not necessarily satisfy $F_{i} \wedge T R_{i} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}$. This results both from refinement that adds invariants learned based on the concrete $T R$, and from A-IC3 that learns an invariant based on some $T R_{i}$, but also adds it to $F_{j+1}$ for $j<i$ even if it is not inductive w.r.t. $T R_{j}$. This complicates the correctness proof.

In particular, in IC3, when a proof obligation $(s, n)$ is handled, then for any predecessor $t$ of $s, \neg t$ is an invariant up to $n-1$, otherwise $s$ would belong to a lower frame (since $F_{i} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{i+1}$ ). Now consider an abstract proof obligation $\left(s_{a}, n\right)$. If we assume to the contrary that the predecessor $t_{a}$ intersects some $F_{i}$ (for $i<n$ ) then we can still deduce that the transition $\left(t_{a}, s_{a}\right) \models T R_{n}$ also exists at a lower frame, i.e. $\left(t_{a}, s_{a}\right) \models T R_{i}$ for $i<n$. This is since $T R_{n} \Rightarrow T R_{i}$ (recall that the same does not necessarily hold for $i>n)$. However, we cannot immediately deduce that $s_{a} \cap F_{i+1} \neq \emptyset$ since $F_{i} \wedge T R_{i} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}$ might not hold. It turns out that this property does hold (see Lemma 6.2.4), but more complicated arguments are needed, based on the following:

Lemma 6.2.12. Let $\bar{F}=\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k+1}\right\rangle$ and $\bar{U}=\left\langle U_{0}, \ldots, U_{k}\right\rangle$ be the sequences obtained at the end of the $k$ 'th iteration of L-IC3, i.e. either at the end of a refinement step or at the end of an iteration of A-IC3 in the case that no counterexample was found. Then

1. $\bar{F}$ is an MFRS.
2. For every clause $c$ that was added to some $F_{i}$ in $\bar{F}$ there exists some $j \geq i-1$ s.t. $c$ is inductive up to $j$ w.r.t. $M_{j}$.
3. No abstract counterexample of length $k+1$ exists w.r.t. the prefix $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$ of $\bar{F}$.

Proof. The proof is inductive. Consider an iteration of L-IC3. It consists of an iteration of A-IC3 adding $F_{k+1}$, possibly followed by a refinement step.

We first show that for every clause $c$ that was added to some $F_{i}$ in $\bar{F}$ during the above, there exists some $j \geq i-1$ s.t. $c$ is inductive up to $j$ w.r.t. $M_{j}$. An important property to note is that during the run of the algorithm, the $F_{i}$ sets, as well as the $T R_{i}$ transition relations are only strengthened (resp., refined). Therefore, if at some point during the algorithm a clause $c$ is inductive up to $j$ w.r.t. $M_{j}$ for some $j$, meaning that $F_{j} \wedge c \wedge T R_{j} \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$ holds, then $c$ will remain inductive up to $j$ w.r.t. $M_{j}$ later on as well, since $F_{j} \wedge c \wedge T R_{j} \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$ will keep holding with the strengthened sets (and refined transition relations). This is because the strengthening only strengthens the left hand side and hence does not damage the implication. As a result, it suffices to show that every clause $c$ that was added to some $F_{i}$ in $\bar{F}$ is inductive up to some $j \leq i-1$ w.r.t. $M_{j}$, at some point during the iteration.

If a clause $c$ is added by A-IC3 to $F_{i}$, then it is either added by calling AddInvariant at some level min $\geq i$ or by calling PropagateClauses at level $\min =i$. In both cases $c$ is inductive at level $\min -1 \geq i-1$ w.r.t. $T R_{\min -1}$ when it is added. If a clause in $F_{i}$ is added during refinement, then there is some level $j+1 \geq i$ where it is a learned clause. Thus by Lemma 6.2.11 at the end of the refinement step it is inductive up to $j \geq i-1$ w.r.t. (the refined) $M_{j}$.

We now show that the obtained $\bar{F}$ is an MFRS. $F_{0}=I N I T$ holds due to the initialization. Similarly, $F_{i} \Rightarrow p$ holds due to the initialization of the $F_{i}$ sets to $p$, and due to the property that the sets are only strengthened later on. $F_{i} \Rightarrow F_{i+1}$ holds when $F_{i+1}$ is initialized (since it is initialized to $p$ and $F_{i} \Rightarrow p$ ), and continues to hold since any clause that is added to $F_{i+1}$ is also added to $F_{i}$. Finally, it remains to show that $F_{i} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{\prime}$. We show this in two parts. First, we show that it holds at the end of the L-IC3 iteration (possibly including a refinement step) that added $F_{i+1}$ to the MFRS. Next, we show that later updates of $F_{i}$ and $F_{i+1}$ maintain this property.

To show that $F_{i} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{\prime}$ holds at the end of the iteration that added $F_{i+1}$ to the MFRS, we recall that $F_{i+1}$ is initialized to $p$ and we note
that the termination condition of an iteration of A-IC3 is that $F_{i} \wedge T R_{i} \wedge$ $\neg p^{\prime}==U N S A T$ (see Strengthen), meaning that $F_{i} \wedge T R_{i} \Rightarrow p^{\prime}=F_{i+1}^{\prime}$. Moreover, since $T R \Rightarrow T R_{i}$, the latter implies that $F_{i} \wedge T R \Rightarrow p^{\prime}=F_{i+1}^{\prime}$. Similarly, the termination condition of the refinement step (if applicable) is that $F_{i} \wedge T R \Rightarrow p^{\prime}=F_{i+1}^{\prime}$. To show that later updates of $F_{i}$ and $F_{i+1}$ maintain this property, we rely on the property that any clause added to $F_{i+1}$ is inductive up to some $j \geq i$ w.r.t. $M_{j}$. This means, that it is also inductive w.r.t. to $M_{c}$. Therefore, $F_{i} \wedge c \wedge T R \Rightarrow c^{\prime}$. Since $c$ is added both to $F_{i}$ and to $F_{i+1}$, the property $F_{i} \wedge T R \Rightarrow F_{i+1}^{\prime}$ is maintained.

It remains to show that no abstract counterexample of length $k+1$ exists w.r.t. the prefix $\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k}\right\rangle$ of $\bar{F}$. If refinement was not needed then this holds trivially since the termination condition of Strengthen is that $F_{k} \wedge$ $T R_{k} \wedge \neg p==U N S A T$.

In particular, this means that the clauses added to the last set of the sequence, $F_{k+1}$, are inductive up to $k$ w.r.t. $M_{k}$, hence at the end of the $k$ 'th iteration of L-IC3 adding $F_{k+1}$ it holds that $F_{k} \wedge T R_{k} \Rightarrow F_{k+1}$ (recall that the same does not necessarily hold for $i<k$ ).

Theorem 6.2.13. L-IC3 either terminates with a fixpoint, in which case the property holds, or with a concrete counterexample.

### 6.2.5 Monotonicity of the Abstraction Sequence

Monotonicity of the abstraction sequence ensures that when A-IC3 attempts to block a state $t_{a}$ that reaches a violation at level $n$, then $\neg t_{a}$ is necessarily an invariant up until $n-1$ (see Lemma 6.2.4). Recall that if some state $t_{a}$ reaches a violation from step $n$ along the abstract transitions, it is not guaranteed that the same violation can be reached from $t_{a}$ at level $i>n$. However, the fact that for each $i<n, U_{i} \subseteq U_{n}$, and as a result $T R_{n} \Leftarrow T R_{i}$, ensures that the same violation can be reached from $t_{a}$ at any level $i<n$.

This ensures that $\neg t_{a}$ is an invariant up until $n-1$, otherwise, the violation would have been found in previous iterations.

The same property does not hold if a non-monotonic abstraction sequence is used, which means that in this case deducing that $\neg t_{a}$ is an invariant up to $n-1$ when attempting to block a state $t_{a}$ at level $n$ is simply incorrect.

Another motivation for the monotonicity of the abstraction sequence is the following. Recall that $F_{i} \subseteq F_{i+1}$ for each $i$. This means that any state $t_{a} \in F_{i}$, and in particular states that reach a violation along some abstract path, will be encountered again in $F_{i+1}$. As a result, the same information needed to show that $t_{a} \in F_{i}$ cannot reach a violation from level $i$ is likely to be needed to show that $t_{a}$ cannot reach a violation from $F_{i+1}$ as well. Restricting the discussion to monotonic abstraction sequences automatically ensures that if the abstract transition relations carry enough information to refute all violations starting at states from $F_{i}$, then the same holds when considering the same states in $F_{i+1}$. While it is possible that a different abstraction can be used to refute the existence of a violation from $i+1$, in most cases the effort of computing this abstraction (by invoking refinement multiple times) exceeds its potential benefit.

### 6.3 Experimental Results

For the implementation of the two algorithms we collaborated with Jasper Design Automation ${ }^{7}$. We used Jasper's formal verification platform in order to implement both the original IC3 and our L-IC3 algorithm. In both implementations we used optimizations from [28] (such as ternary simulation). Implementing these algorithms using Jasper's platform allowed us to develop and experiment with various real-life industrial designs and properties from various major semiconductor companies. All designs contain thousands of state variables in the cone of influence of the properties.

[^14]
(a) Runtime trend. Dots represent IC3, triangles represent L-IC3. Test-cases are sorted in an increasing runtime order.

(b) Comparing runtime. IC3 on X-axis and L-IC3 on Y-axis

Figure 6.6: Runtime information for L-IC3 and IC3

The timeout was set to 3600 seconds and experiments were conducted on systems with Intel Xeon X5660 running at 2.8 GHz and 24 GB of main memory.

We experimented with 122 real safety properties from different designs. Figure 6.6 shows two different analyses comparing the runtime of L-IC3 and IC3. Runtime trends are shown in Figure 6.6a. As can be seen, the overall trend is in favor of L-IC3. In Figure 6.6b runtime for IC3 and L-IC3 is represented by the $X$-axis and $Y$-axis respectively. We can clearly see the advantage of using L-IC3 on the more complicated test cases. These test cases are represented by the dots that are below the diagonal by a big margin. On these examples, the improvement in runtime is up to $\boldsymbol{t w o}$ orders
of magnitude. The cases where IC3 performs better are usually cases where L-IC3 spends most of the time in refinement. Also, for false properties (counterexample exists), the performance of L-IC3 is affected by the way we treat may and must obligations. Due to our special handling, L-IC3 may lose the ability to find a counterexample which is longer than the length of the computed $\Omega$. In those cases, IC3 may perform better. Note that the scatter at the middle is a bunch of comparable properties where both algorithms are on par.

In the given timeout, 7 properties cannot be solved by IC3 but are solved by L-IC3; 5 properties cannot be solved by L-IC3 but are solved by IC3. There are also 5 properties that cannot be solved by either algorithm. The overall runtime for IC3 is 75558 seconds while for L-IC3 it is 55424 seconds.

The laziness of our abstraction-refinement algorithm is demonstrated in Table 6.1. The table shows how the abstraction is refined along increasing time frames. Different frames contain different variables that are needed in order to prove or disprove the given property. This demonstrates the fact that L-IC3 indeed takes advantage of the lazy abstraction framework.

Table 6.2 presents runtime characteristics for L-IC3 and IC3. In particular, it shows the number of clauses and the number of variables in $\Omega$ when either a fixpoint or a counterexample is found. In many of the examples the number of clauses produced by L-IC3 for its $\Omega$ is significantly smaller than the number of clauses produced by IC3. Recall that each of the clauses is learned via several local reachability checks. The reduced number of clauses thus indicates that L-IC3 applies a smaller number of checks and therefore issues a smaller number of calls to the SAT solver. This can explain the speedups it obtains.

An additional reason for the speedups is the fact that the local reachability checks of L-IC3 are easier than those of IC3. This is because the abstract transition relations $T R_{i}$ are much smaller (in number of variables) than $T R$ (see table 6.1). Further, the sets $F_{i}$, computed by L-IC3 are smaller than
those computed by IC3 (see Table 6.2).
Recall that in Section 6.2.1 we distinguish between must and may obligations. The results reported above are obtained while using this distinction and handling all the may obligations after the must obligations, as described there. We also tried other configurations. For example, we ran experiments that do not distinguish between must and may obligations. Our experiments show that distinguishing between the two yields a better overall performance.

In addition to the industrial experiments, we also ran experiments on the HWMCC'11 benchmark. We used the test-cases with single properties. Most of the properties in this benchmark are fairly easy and can be solved in a matter of a few seconds both by IC3 and L-IC3. There are also a few cases where IC3 performs better or even reaches a result while L-IC3 does not. In these cases L-IC3 spends most of the time in refinement. On the other hand, there are several test cases that can only be solved by L-IC3 while IC3 reaches timeout.

| N | \#Vars | Laziness - Time Frames and Number of Vars |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | \#TF | \#AV | \#TF | \#AV | \#TF | \#AV | \#TF | \#AV | \#TF | \#AV | \#TF | \#AV | \#TF | \#AV | \#TF | \#AV | \#TF | \#AV |
| $f_{1}$ | 11866 | [0-0] | 323 | [1-1] | 647 | [2-2] | 686 | [3-3] | 699 | [4-4] |  | [5-5] |  | [6-6] |  | ${ }^{[7-7]}$ | 728 | [8-8] | 743 |
|  |  | [9-9] | 752 | [10-10] | 755 | [11-11] | 761 | [12-12] | 767 | [13-13] | 777 | [14-14] | 783 | [15-15] | 789 | [16-18] | 811 |  |  |
| $f_{2}$ | 5693 | [0-7] | 12 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{3}$ | 5693 | [0-0] | 8 | [1-1] | 56 | [2-2] | 64 | [3-3] | 74 | [4-4] | 82 | [5-7] | 91 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{4}$ | 5693 | [0-6] | 31 | [7-7] | 42 | [8-8] | 51 | [9-13] | 54 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{5}$ | 5773 | [0-0] | 260 | [1-1] | 381 | [2-2] | 401 | [3-3] | 419 | [4-34] | 430 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{6}$ | 1183 | [0-0] | 185 | [1-1] | 248 | [2-2] | 255 | [3-3] | 259 | [4-4] | 262 | $[5-5]$ | 268 | [6-8] | 270 | [9-9] | 273 | [10-30] | 274 |
| $f_{7}$ | 1247 | [0-0] | 57 | [1-1] | 62 | [2-2] | 73 | [3-7] | 76 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{8}$ | 1247 | [0-0] | 63 | [1-1] | 64 | [2-2] | 72 | [3-6] | 83 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{9}$ | 1277 | [0-0] | 263 | [1-1] | 303 | [2-2] | 318 | [3-3] | 321 | [4-4] | 322 | [5-5] | 323 | [6-26] | 347 |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{10}$ | 1389 | [0-0] | 253 | [1-1] | 304 | [2-2] | 324 | [3-3] | 341 | [4-4] | 351 | [5-5] | 355 | [6-7] | 363 | [8-9] | 399 | [10-10] | 409 |
|  |  | [11-12] | 415 | [13-13] | 419 | [14-16] | 429 | [17-18] | 431 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{11}$ | 1183 | [0-0] | 79 | [1-1] | 113 | [2-9] | 114 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{12}$ | 1204 | [0-0] | 58 | [1-1] | 67 | [2-2] | 75 | [3-7] | 76 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{13}$ | 3844 | [0-0] | 470 | [1-1] | 504 | [2-2] | 528 | [3-3] | 533 | [4-4] | 534 | [5-11] | 650 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{14}$ | 3832 | [0-0] | 333 | [1-1] | 365 | [2-2] | 386 | [3-5] | 391 | [6-6] | 442 | [7-10] | 446 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{15}$ | 3854 | [0-0] | 428 | [1-1] | 453 | [2-2] | 495 | [3-3] | 499 | [4-4] | 503 | $[5-5]$ | 560 | [6-6] | 574 | [7-7] | 576 | [8-10] | 577 |
| $f_{16}$ | 3848 | [0-0] | -432 | [1-1] | 462 | [2-2] | 487 | [3-3] | 498 | [4-4] | 501 | [5-5] | 634 | [6-6] | 650 | [7-13] | 658 |  |  |
| $f_{17}$ | 3854 | [0-0] | 426 | [1-1] | 480 | [2-2] | 525 | [3-3] | 539 | [4-4] | 540 | [5-5] | 559 | [6-11] | 570 |  |  |  |  |
| $f_{18}$ | 3848 | [0-0] | 469 | [1-1] | 547 | [2-2] | 551 | [3-3] | 553 | [4-4] | 635 | [5-5] | 672 | [6-10] | 674 |  |  |  |  |

Table 6.1: Lazy abstraction. N stands for the name of the verified property. $\sharp$ Vars stands for the number of state variables in the concrete model $M_{c}$. $\sharp \mathrm{TF}$ stands for the time frames and $\sharp \mathrm{AV}$ represents the number of variables (defining the abstract $T R_{i}$ ) in the abstract model $M_{i}$ at the given time frame $i$ (appearing in the column $\sharp \mathrm{TF})$.

| N | \#Vars | Stat | $\# \mathrm{~V}[\Omega]$ | $\# \mathrm{~V}\left[\Omega_{L}\right]$ | $\# \mathrm{C}[\Omega]$ | $\# C\left[\Omega_{L}\right]$ | $k$ | $k_{L}$ | T | $\mathrm{T}_{L}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $f_{1}$ | 11866 | false | 1001 | 818 | 8457 | 3939 | 15 | 18 | 1646 | 599 |
| $f_{2}$ | 5693 | rue | 236 | 11 | 617 | 62 | 14 | 8 | 133 | 9.2 |
| $f_{3}$ | 5693 | ue | 229 | 121 | 1314 | 570 | 13 | 8 | 351 | 40.5 |
| $f_{4}$ | 5693 | ue | 104 | 24 | 2101 | 32 | 32 | 14 | 513 | 13.6 |
| $f_{5}$ | 5773 | true | $>616^{*}$ | 414 | $>16689^{*}$ | 12425 | $7{ }^{*}$ | 35 | TO | 1223 |
| $f_{6}$ | 1183 | true | 432 | 370 | 50511 | 29316 | 36 | 31 | 2216 | 2763 |
| $f_{7}$ | 1247 | true | 250 | 152 | 10732 | 238 | 11 | 8 | 432 | 2.6 |
| $f_{8}$ | 1247 | rue | 177 | 96 | 14702 | 293 | 8 | 7 | 520 | 3.5 |
| $f_{9}$ | 1277 | false | 357 | 331 | 8762 | 3788 | 13 | 27 | 164 | 101 |
| $f_{10}$ | 1389 | false | 397 | 417 | 12455 | 19742 | 13 | 19 | 262 | 1268 |
| $f_{11}$ | 1183 | true | 114 | 106 | 29183 | 2589 | 9 | 10 | 1153 | 109 |
| $f_{12}$ | 1204 | true | 114 | 105 | 18698 | 229 | 8 | 8 | 818 | 3.0 |
| $f_{13}$ | 3844 | true | 320 | 578 | 547 | 1529 | 10 | 12 | 16.7 | 59.1 |
| $f_{14}$ | 3832 | true | 650 | 488 | 2414 | 1553 | 12 | 11 | 117 | 61 |
| $f_{15}$ | 3854 | tr | $>470^{*}$ | 666 | >8320** | 5363 | $6^{*}$ | 11 | TO | 730 |
| $f_{16}$ | 3848 | true | $>687^{*}$ | 826 | $>7733^{*}$ | 5506 | 8* | 14 | TO | 381 |
| $f_{17}$ | 3854 | true | 811 | 673 | 10934 | 1837 | 13 | 12 | 919 | 83 |
| $f_{18}$ | 3848 | true | 898 | 716 | 9889 | 2080 | 13 | 11 | 1891 | 84 |
| $f_{19}$ | 3848 | true | 966 | $>216^{*}$ | 13370 | $>266^{*}$ | 11 | $7{ }^{*}$ | 2225 | TO |

Table 6.2: Running parameters for various properties. $N$ stands for the name of the verified property. $\sharp$ Vars stands for the number of state variables in the cone of influence. $\sharp \mathrm{V}[\Omega]$ - number of variables in $\Omega, \sharp \mathrm{C}[\Omega]$ - number of clauses in $\Omega, k$ - size of $\Omega(M, p)$ and T - the runtime in seconds. The subscript $L$ represents the value for the Lazy version (L-IC3).

## Chapter 7

## Conclusion

We presented four methods that aim at improving existing SAT-based unbounded model checking. The first three, ISB, DAR and CNF-ITP, are based on interpolation. With ISB and DAR we show different ways to use interpolants for reachability analysis. With CNF-ITP, we present a novel method for interpolants computation that yields interpolants in CNF. Further we show how this fact can be used in an interpolation-based algorithm. The last method we present, L-IC3, is based on IC3. Unlike interpolation-based methods, IC3 and L-IC3 are based on local reachability checks. With L-IC3 we show how to tightly integrate a lazy abstraction mechanism into IC3

We believe there is more to be done in order to make SAT-based model checking more efficient. One possibility is to integrate interpolation and IC3style approaches in a tighter manner. Each of the approach uses a different generalization mechanism when computing the over-approximation of reachable states. It may be the case, that integrating the two may yield better performance.

In the context of interpolation, another possibility is to better understand interpolants in the context of resolution proofs. By analyzing the mechanics of CDCL SAT-solvers, one can try and make the proof produced by such solvers better suited for interpolants in the context of model checking.

## Bibliography

[1] Gilles Audemard and Laurent Simon. Predicting learnt clauses quality in modern sat solvers. In Craig Boutilier, editor, IJCAI, pages 399-404, 2009.
[2] Omer Bar-Ilan, Oded Fuhrmann, Shlomo Hoory, Ohad Shacham, and Ofer Strichman. Linear-time reductions of resolution proofs. In Hana Chockler and Alan J. Hu, editors, Haifa Verification Conference, volume 5394 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 114-128. Springer, 2008.
[3] Armin Biere, Cyrille Artho, and Viktor Schuppan. Liveness checking as safety checking. Electr. Notes Theor. Comput. Sci., 66(2):160-177, 2002.
[4] Armin Biere, Alessandro Cimatti, Edmund M. Clarke, Ofer Strichman, and Yunshan Zhu. Bounded model checking. Advances in Computers, 58:117-148, 2003.
[5] Armin Biere, Alessandro Cimatti, Edmund M. Clarke, and Yunshan Zhu. Symbolic model checking without BDDs. In Rance Cleaveland, editor, TACAS, volume 1579 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 193-207. Springer, 1999.
[6] Per Bjesse and Anna Slobodová, editors. International Conference on Formal Methods in Computer-Aided Design, FMCAD '11, Austin, TX, USA, October 30 - November 02, 2011. FMCAD Inc., 2011.
[7] Aaron R. Bradley. k-step relative inductive generalization. CoRR, abs/1003.3649, 2010.
[8] Aaron R. Bradley. Sat-based model checking without unrolling. In Ranjit Jhala and David A. Schmidt, editors, VMCAI, volume 6538 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 70-87. Springer, 2011.
[9] Aaron R. Bradley and Zohar Manna. Checking safety by inductive generalization of counterexamples to induction. In FMCAD, pages 173-180. IEEE Computer Society, 2007.
[10] Aaron R. Bradley, Fabio Somenzi, Zyad Hassan, and Yan Zhang. An incremental approach to model checking progress properties. In Bjesse and Slobodová [6], pages 144-153.
[11] Ed Brinksma and Kim Guldstrand Larsen, editors. Computer Aided Verification, 14th International Conference, CAV 2002,Copenhagen, Denmark, July 27-31, 2002, Proceedings, volume 2404 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science. Springer, 2002.
[12] Randal E. Bryant. Graph-based algorithms for boolean function manipulation. IEEE Trans. Computers, 35(8):677-691, 1986.
[13] Jerry R. Burch, Edmund M. Clarke, Kenneth L. McMillan, David L. Dill, and L. J. Hwang. Symbolic model checking: $10^{20}$ states and beyond. Inf. Comput., 98(2):142-170, 1992.
[14] Gianpiero Cabodi, Marco Murciano, Sergio Nocco, and Stefano Quer. Stepping forward with interpolants in unbounded model checking. In Soha Hassoun, editor, ICCAD, pages 772-778. ACM, 2006.
[15] Gianpiero Cabodi, Sergio Nocco, and Stefano Quer. Mixing forward and backward traversals in guided-prioritized bdd-based verification. In Brinksma and Larsen [11], pages 471-484.
[16] Gianpiero Cabodi, Sergio Nocco, and Stefano Quer. Interpolation sequences revisited. In DATE, pages 316-322. IEEE, 2011.
[17] Hana Chockler, Alexander Ivrii, and Arie Matsliah. Computing interpolants without proofs. In Armin Biere, Amir Nahir, and Tanja E. J. Vos, editors, Haifa Verification Conference, volume 7857 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 72-85. Springer, 2012.
[18] E. Clarke, D. Kroening, N. Sharygina, and K. Yorav. SATABS: SATbased predicate abstraction for ANSI-C. In Halbwachs and Zuck [34].
[19] Edmund Clarke, Orna Grumberg, Somesh Jha, Yuan Lu, and Helmut Veith. Counterexample-guided abstraction refinement for symbolic model checking. JACM, 2003.
[20] Edmund Clarke Clarke, Orna Grumberg, and Doron Peled. Model Checking. MIT press, 1999.
[21] Edmund M. Clarke, E. Allen Emerson, and A. Prasad Sistla. Automatic verification of finite-state concurrent systems using temporal logic specifications. ACM Trans. Program. Lang. Syst., 8(2):244-263, 1986.
[22] Edmund M. Clarke, Orna Grumberg, Somesh Jha, Yuan Lu, and Helmut Veith. Counterexample-guided abstraction refinement for symbolic model checking. J. ACM, 50(5):752-794, 2003.
[23] W. Craig. Linear reasoning. a new form of the herbrand-gentzen theorem. J. Symb. Log., 22(3), 1957.
[24] Martin Davis and Hilary Putnam. A computing procedure for quantification theory. J. ACM, 7(3):201-215, July 1960.
[25] Vijay D'Silva, Daniel Kroening, Mitra Purandare, and Georg Weissenbacher. Interpolant strength. In VMCAI, pages 129-145, 2010.
[26] Vijay D'Silva, Mitra Purandare, and Daniel Kroening. Approximation refinement for interpolation-based model checking. In Francesco Logozzo, Doron Peled, and Lenore D. Zuck, editors, VMCAI, volume 4905 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 68-82. Springer, 2008.
[27] Niklas Eén and Armin Biere. Effective preprocessing in SAT through variable and clause elimination. In Fahiem Bacchus and Toby Walsh, editors, SAT, volume 3569 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 61-75. Springer, 2005.
[28] Niklas Eén, Alan Mishchenko, and Robert K. Brayton. Efficient implementation of property directed reachability. In Bjesse and Slobodová [6], pages 125-134.
[29] Niklas Eén and Niklas Sörensson. An extensible sat-solver. In Enrico Giunchiglia and Armando Tacchella, editors, SAT, volume 2919 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 502-518. Springer, 2003.
[30] Evgueni Goldberg and Yakov Novikov. Verification of proofs of unsatisfiability for CNF formulas. In DATE, pages 886-891, 2003.
[31] Orna Grumberg, Assaf Schuster, and Avi Yadgar. Memory efficient allsolutions sat solver and its application for reachability analysis. In Hu and Martin [37], pages 275-289.
[32] A. Gupta, M. Ganai, Z. Yang, and P. Ashar. Iterative abstraction using SAT-based BMC with proof analysis. In ICCAD, 2003.
[33] A. Gupta and O. Strichman. Abstraction refinement for bounded model checking. In CAV, 2005.
[34] Nicolas Halbwachs and Lenore D. Zuck, editors. Tools and Algorithms for the Construction and Analysis of Systems, 11th International Conference, TACAS 2005, Held as Part of the Joint European Conferences on Theory and Practice of Software, ETAPS 2005, Edinburgh, UK, April 4-8, 2005, Proceedings, volume 3440 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science. Springer, 2005.
[35] T. A. Henzinger, R. Jhala, R. Majumdar, and K. L. McMillan. Abstractions from proofs. In POPL, 2004.
[36] T.A. Henzinger and R. Majumdar R. Jhala. Lazy abstraction. In POPL, 2002.
[37] Alan J. Hu and Andrew K. Martin, editors. Formal Methods in Computer-Aided Design, 5th International Conference, FMCAD 2004, Austin, Texas, USA, November 15-17, 2004, Proceedings, volume 3312 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science. Springer, 2004.
[38] Ranjit Jhala and Kenneth L. McMillan. Interpolant-based transition relation approximation. In $C A V, 2005$.
[39] Orna Kupferman and Moshe Y. Vardi. Model Checking of Safety Properties. In $C A V$, pages 172-183, 1999.
[40] R. P. Kurshan. Computer-aided verification of coordinating processes: the automata-theoretic approach. Princeton University Press, 1994.
[41] John Launchbury and John C. Mitchell, editors. Conference Record of POPL 2002: The 29th SIGPLAN-SIGACT Symposium on Principles of Programming Languages, Portland, OR, USA, January 16-18, 2002. ACM, 2002.
[42] João Marques-Silva. Interpolant learning and reuse in SAT-based model checking. Electr. Notes Theor. Comput. Sci., 174(3):31-43, 2007.
[43] K. L. McMillan. Interpolation and SAT-based Model Checking. In CAV, 2003.
[44] K. L. McMillan. Lazy Abstraction with Interpolants. In $C A V, 2006$.
[45] K. L. McMillan and N. Amla. Automatic Abstraction without Counterexamples. In TACAS, 2003.
[46] Kenneth L. McMillan. Applying sat methods in unbounded symbolic model checking. In Brinksma and Larsen [11], pages 250-264.
[47] Kenneth L. McMillan. Applications of craig interpolants in model checking. In Halbwachs and Zuck [34], pages 1-12.
[48] Matthew W. Moskewicz, Conor F. Madigan, Ying Zhao, Lintao Zhang, and Sharad Malik. Chaff: Engineering an efficient sat solver. In $D A C$, pages 530-535. ACM, 2001.
[49] Amir Pnueli. The temporal logic of programs. In FOCS, pages 46-57. IEEE Computer Society, 1977.
[50] P. Pudlák. Lower bounds for resolution and cutting plane proofs and monotone computations. J. Symb. Log., 62(3), 1997.
[51] Jean-Pierre Queille and Joseph Sifakis. Specification and verification of concurrent systems in CESAR. In Mariangiola Dezani-Ciancaglini and Ugo Montanari, editors, Symposium on Programming, volume 137 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 337-351. Springer, 1982.
[52] Simone Rollini, Roberto Bruttomesso, and Natasha Sharygina. An efficient and flexible approach to resolution proof reduction. In Sharon Barner, Ian G. Harris, Daniel Kroening, and Orna Raz, editors, Haifa Verification Conference, volume 6504 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 182-196. Springer, 2010.
[53] Vadim Ryvchin and Ofer Strichman. Faster extraction of high-level minimal unsatisfiable cores. In Karem A. Sakallah and Laurent Simon, editors, SAT, volume 6695 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 174-187. Springer, 2011.
[54] Mary Sheeran, Satnam Singh, and Gunnar Stålmarck. Checking safety properties using induction and a sat-solver. In Warren A. Hunt Jr. and Steven D. Johnson, editors, FMCAD, volume 1954 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 108-125. Springer, 2000.
[55] João P. Marques Silva and Karem A. Sakallah. Grasp: A search algorithm for propositional satisfiability. IEEE Trans. Computers, 48(5):506-521, 1999.
[56] Christian Stangier and Thomas Sidle. Invariant checking combining forward and backward traversal. In Hu and Martin [37], pages 414-429.
[57] Yakir Vizel and Orna Grumberg. Interpolation-sequence based model checking. In FMCAD, pages 1-8. IEEE, 2009.
[58] Yakir Vizel, Orna Grumberg, and Sharon Shoham. Lazy abstraction and sat-based reachability in hardware model checking. In Gianpiero Cabodi and Satnam Singh, editors, FMCAD, pages 173-181. IEEE, 2012.
[59] Yakir Vizel, Orna Grumberg, and Sharon Shoham. Intertwined forwardbackward reachability analysis using interpolants. In Nir Piterman and Scott A. Smolka, editors, TACAS, volume 7795 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 308-323. Springer, 2013.
[60] Yakir Vizel, Vadim Ryvchin, and Alexander Nadel. Efficient generation of small interpolants in cnf. In Natasha Sharygina and Helmut Veith, editors, CAV, volume 8044 of Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 330-346. Springer, 2013.
[61] Lintao Zhang and Sharad Malik. Extracting small unsatisfiable cores from unsatisfiable Boolean formula. In SAT, 2003.
[62] Lintao Zhang and Sharad Malik. Validating SAT solvers using an independent resolution-based checker: Practical implementations and other applications. In DATE, pages 10880-10885, 2003.

בפרק 3 אנו מציגים אלגוריתם מבוסס סדרת אינטרפולנטים אשר נקרא ISB. אלגוריתם זה מבוסס על BMC בכל איטרצית BMC כאשר מחפשים אחר דוגמא נגדית, במידה וכזו אינה קיימת, סדרת אינטרפולנטים מחושבת כך שהיא מייצגת קירוב יתר של מצבים ישיגים במערכת. בשונה מהאלגוריתם הראשון המבוסס אינטרפולנטים, ISB לא מוסיף את האינטרפולנטים אל הנוסחה אותה בודק ה ... ובכך מבטל את השפעת גודל האינטרפולנט.

בפרק 4 אנו מציגים אלגוריתם שמחשב מצבים ישיגים גם מהמצבים ההתחלתיים (על ידי חישוב קידמי) ומצבים שיכולים להגיע אל המצבים הרעים (על ידי חישוב אחורי). אלגוריתם זה, שנקרא DAR, יכול להראות כמו גרסה משופרת של ISB. החישוב הקידמי והאחורי ב DAR מופעלים בצורה אחודה. כלומר, החישוב הקידמי משתמש במידע מן החישוב האחורי ולהיפך. בשונה מ ITP ומ DAR ,ISB הוא ברובו מקומי. כלומר, הוא אינו דורש פריסה של רלציית המעברים ברוב המקרים.

בפרק 5 אנו מציגים אלגוריתם חדשני לחישוב אינטרפולנטים עבור בדיקת מודל. בשונה מאלגוריתמים קודמים שהשתמשו בחישוב אינטרפולנטים כללי, אנו מציגים חישוב המונחה על ידי הבעיה אותה מנסים לפתור. האלגוריתם פועל בשני שלבים. בשלב הראשון, מחושב קירוב של אינטרפולנט. קירוב זה מקיים רק חלק מתכונות האינטרפולנט ועל כן, בשלב השני, הופכים את הקירוב לאינטרפולנט על ידי תהליך שנקרא ״"חיזוק״. החיזוק מתייחס למבנה הבעיה הספציפי בכך מתקבל אלגוריתם יעיל. תכונה חשובה של אלגוריתם זה הינה העובדה שהאינטרפולנט המחושב הינו בצורה נורמלית הנקראת Conjuctive Normal Form (CNF). גם בתכונה זו אנו עושים שימוש ומציגים גריסה משופרת של האלגוריתם ITP המשתמשת בעובדה

שהאינטרפולנט נתון כ CNF.

בפרק 6 אנו מציגים גרסה חדשה של IC3 הנקראת LIC3. בגרסה זו נעשה שימוש במנגנון של אבסטרקציה עצלה. אך לא כמו אלגוריתמים אחרים בהם האבסטרקציה מנותקת מאלגוריתם האימות, LIC3, משלב את האבסטרקציה ואת IC3 לכדי אלגוריתם אחוד.

האבסטרקציה בה אנו משתמשים היא אבסטרקציה של משתנים נראים. כלומר, בכל שלב של החישוב אנו משתמשים בקבוצה שונה של משתנים מהמערכת הנתונה.

השימוש באבסטרקציה ב LIC3 גורם לאלגוריתם לבצע בדיקות SAT יעילות יותר וגם הופך את תהליך ההכללה, עליו IC3 נשען ליעיל יותר.

להעלות את רמת הדיוק. רמת הדיוק עולה כאשר מגדילים את אורך הדוגמאות הנגדיות אחריהן מחפשים. כפי שציינו, האורך נקבע על ידי הלולאה החיצונית, לכן הלולאה הפנימית עוצרת במקרה הנ"ל והלולאה החיצונית עוברת לאיטרציה הבאה.

קיימות שתי בעיות אותן אנחנו מנסים לפתור בשיטה זו. מאחר והאינטרפולנט הוא נוסחה פסוקית שמחליפה את המצבים ההתחלתיים, אם נוסחה זו היא מורכבת וגדולה, ייתכן ולא נוכל לפתור את בעייתה הספיקות. לכן, הבעיה הראשונה היא גודלם של האינטרפולנטים המחושבים. הבעיה השניה היא היא הצורך להגדיל את האורך של הדוגמאות הנגדיות אותן מחפשים על מנת להעלות את רמת הדיוק של קירוב היתר בו אנו משתמשים.

שיטה אלטרנטיבית, שכמו ITP, מבוססת ספיקות ומחשבת קירוב יתר של מצבים ישיגים הוצגה על ידי אהרון בראדלי ונקראת IC3. בשונה מ IC3 ,ITP אינו משתמש בפריסה של רלציית המעברים על מנת להעלות את רמת הדיוק של הקירוב. IC3 משתמש בבדיקות ישיגות מקומיות אשר עושות שימוש במופע אחד של רלציית

המעברים.

בעוד ITP משתמש ב SAT-solver כקופסא שחורה בזמן החיפוש אחר דוגמא נגדית ובזמן ההכללה, IC3 מנהל את החיפוש אחר הדוגמא הנגדית ואת ההכללה. IC3 מבוסם על חיפוש לאחור. כלומר, האלגוריתם מתחיל ממצב רע ומנסה לבנות דוגמא נגדית על ידי מציאת מצב קדמון שמגיע אל המצב הרע. לאחר מכן, מן המצב הקדמון, ינסה האלגוריתם למצוא מצב קדמון נוסף עד אשר לא יוכל להתקדם אחורה יותר או עד שיגיע למצבים ההתחלתיים ובכך ימצא דוגמא נגדית. במקרה ולא נמצאת דוגמא נגדית, IC3 מכליל את הסיפא שמצא לכדי מידע בנוגע למצבים היישיגים במערכת. ההכללה מתבצעת על ידי הליך שנקרא הכללה אינדוקטיבית (inductive generalization). תהליך זה הוא חלק ממה שעושה את IC3 יעיל. תהליך ההכללה האינדוקטיבי אמנם עושה את IC3 יעיל, אך הוא גם נקודת החולשה של האלגוריתם. כאשר תהליך ההכללה נכשל, IC3 פועל בצורה שדומה לאינומרציית מצבים. כאשר מספר המצבים במערכת גדול, אינומרציית מצבים הינה בלתי יעילה ובמקרים אלה IC3 איננו יעיל.

## 

מטרת המחקר הינה למצוא מענה לנקודות החולשה שהזכרנו קודם לכן. בהקשר של אינטרפולציה, אנו מתמודדים עם גודל האינטרפולנטים או על ידי שימוש שונה מהם כחלק מאלגוריתם האימות או על ידי חישוב שונה של האינטרפולנט. בהקשר של IC3 אנו מוסיפים אלמנט של אבסטרקציה עצלה לאלגוריתם על מנת להפוך אותו ליעיל יותר.

כעת נסקור חלק מהאתגרים בבדיקת מודל מבוססת ספיקות. כמו כן, נסקור את הדרך שלנו להתמודדות עם
אתגרים אלה.

## האתגרים בבדיקת מודל מבוסטת ספיקות

עבודה זו מוקדשת לשיפורה של בדיקת מודל מבוססת אינטרפולציה ומבוססת IC3/PDR. שיטות אלה מחשבות את קבוצות המצבים הישיגים במערכת על ידי שימוש בקירוב יתר. החישוב מתבצע תוך כדי ניסיון להראות כי לא קיימת דוגמא נגדית עבור התכונה הנבדקת. קירוב היתר של המצבים הישיגים מתבצע על ידי הכללה. הכללה הינה התהליך של הסקת מסקנה כללית מתוך מידע על מקרה פרטי. בדיקת מודל מבוססת אינטרפולציה (ITP) הוצגה לראשונה על ידי קן מקמילן. בשיטה זו, קירוב היתר של המצבים הישיגים מחושב על ידי שימוש באינטרפולנטי קרייג (Craig interpolants). המשפט של קרייג מציין כי בהינתן זוג נוסחאות A ו B כך שהגימום של שתי הנוסחאות אינו ספיק, ניתן לחשב נוסחה שלישית
 האינטרפולנטים מחושבים מתוך הוכחת רזולוציה שמיוצרת על ידי SAT-solver כאשר נוסחה היא איננה ספיקה. הנוסחאות בהן ITP עושה שימוש הן נוסחאות BMC. כאשר נוסחת BMC היא בלתי ספיקה, ניתן להסיק כי לא קיימת דוגמא נגדית באורך מסויים. על ידי שימוש במשפט של קרייג ניתן לחשב אינטרפולנט שמייצג קירוב יתר של מצבים ישיגים. מאחר וניתן לכרות מידע על המצבים הישיגים, ניתן להשתמש בשיטה זו על מנת להוכיח נכונות של תכונה.

אינטרפולנטים הנם דוגמא להכללה. מאחר ופתרון בעיית ה BMC משמש ככלי להוכחת אי קיום של דוגמא
נגדית באורך מסויים, היכולת להסיק מסקנה בנוגע לדוגמאות נגדיות ארוכות יותר הוא צורה של הכללה. עובד בצורה איטרטיבית ומבוסס על לולאה מכוננת. הלולאה החיצונית שולטת על אורך הדוגמא הנגדית ITP שמחפשים ב BMC והללואה הפנימית בודקת נוסחאות BMC באורך קבוע ומחשבת אינטרפולנטים כל עוד נוסחות אלה הן אינן ספיקות. כאשר נוסחת BMC היא בלתי ספיקה, מחושב אינטרפולנט. האינטרפולנט מחליף את המצבים ההתחלתיים מהם מתחיל החיפוש אחר דוגמא נגדית באיטרציה הבאה. מאחר והאינטרפולנטים מייצגים קירוב יתר של מצבים ישיגים, ניתן להשתמש בהם על מנת לקבוע מתי הושגה נקודת שבת. נקוקדת השבת מוכיחה כי כל המצבים הישיגים במערכת נבדקו וכולם מקיימים את התכונה ולכן ניתן להסיק כי המערכת מקיימת את התכונה הנבדקת. במצב שנוסחת BMC הנבדקת בלולאה הפנימית היא ספיקה, אם המצבים ההתחלתיים לא שונו (איטרציה ראשונה) ניתן להסיק כי קיימת דוגמא נגדית. אם לא, לא ניתן להסיק כי קיימת דוגמא נגדית ויודעים כי קירוב היתר המתבצע על ידי האינטרפולנטים הוא גס מידי ויש

מערכות ממוחשבות חולשות כמעט על כל תחום של חיינו ופעולתם הנכונה היא הכרחית. בדיקת מודל הינה תהליך אימות אוטומטי שבהינתן מערכת בודק קיום של תכונה מסויימת ביחס למערכת זו. המערכת מתוארת
 (Logic). בשונה מאימות מבוסס סימולציה, בדיקת מודל ממצאה מאחר והיא מכסה את כל ההתנהגויות האפשריות במערכת ומוכיחה את קיום התכונה או מוצאת דוגמא נגדית לאי קיום התכונה. בדיקת מודל יושמה ומיושמת בבדיקת מערכות חומרה ותוכנה. אך המגבלה המרכזית של השיטה היא בעיית התפוצצות המצבים. בעיה זו מקורה במספר המצבים במערכות אמיתיות. בדיקת המודל דורשת זיכרון רב וחישוב מורכב ביחס לגודל המודל, ולכן, עבור מודלים גדולים, בדיקת מודל עלולה להיות בלתי יישימה. חלק נכבד מהמחקר בתחום מוקדש להתמודדות עם הבעיה.

השימוש בתרשימי החלטה בינריים (BDDs) היה הצעד המשמעותי הראשון בהתמודדות עם בעיית התפוצצות המצבים. בדיקת מודל סימבולית, מבוססת BDDs אפשרה בדיקת מודל של מערכות חומרה אמיתיות עם כמה מאות של משתני מצב. אך עדיין, חלקים ממערכות חומרה בעלי פונקציונליות מוגדרת מכילים אלפי משתני מצב ויותר. כדי להתמודד עם מערכות כאלה, פותחה בדיקת מודל חסומה, מבוססת ספיקות מבוסס על פריסה של רצליית המעברים על מנת לחפש דוגמא נגדית באורך מסויים. אך BMC .(BMC) למרות היכולת של שיטה זו להתמודד עם מערכות גדולות יותר, החסרון העיקרי שלה הוא היותה נאותה אך לא שלמה. כלומר, מטרתה העקרית היא מציאת דוגמאות נגדיות ולא הוכחת נכונות.

מספר שיטות פותחו על מנת להתמודד עם בעית השלמות של השיטה מבוססת הספיקות. אינדוקציד, אינטרפולציה, סדרת אינטרפולציה, בנייה אינקרמנטלית של פסוקיות אינדוקטיביות לנכונות ודאית (IC3/PDR) , עצל (L-IC3) הן שיתות מבוססות ספיקות שהן נאותות ושלמות ויכולות להוכיח נכונות של תכונה עבור מערכת נתונה.

מתוך השיטות האלה L-IC3 משתמשת באבסטרקציה. אבסטרקציה היא שיטה נוספת להתמודדות עם בעיית התפוצצות המצבים. על ידי שימוש באבסטרקציה, חלקים מהמערכת, שאינם רלוונטיים להוכחת התכונה, מוסרים. על ידי הסרת החלקים הלא רלוונטיים, מתקבלת מערכת קטנה יותר המכילה פחות מצבים מה שמקל על בדיקת המודל. אבסטרקציה עצלה פותחה לראשונה עבור מערכות תוכנה. שיטה זו מאפשרת הסרת חלקים שונים של המערכת בשלבים שונים של האימות.

בראש ובראשונה ברצוני להודות למנחה שלי, פרופי פרי אורנה גימברג. היא הובילה אותי בסבלנות במסעי כחוקר מתחיל, עזרה לי ככל האפששר אך גם איפשרה לער לי לגדול ולפתח את עצמאותי האקדמית. הייתה לי הזכות לעבוד עם חוקרת בעל לעלמת שם עולמי בתחום האימות הפורמלי ואני בטוח שהיא נתנה לי את כל הכלים הדרושים על מנת להמשיך ולהצליח. ברצוני להודות לד״ר שרון שוהם, ד״ר אלכס נאדל וד״ר ודים ריבקין על שיתוף פעולה פורה ומוצלח. אני בטוח שהניסיון שצברתי תוך כדי שיתוף הפעולה ילווה אותי בהמשך דרכי. כמו כן, ברצוני להודות לד״ר זיאד חנא על התמיכה וההזדמנות שנתן לי לממש את מת מחקרי בסביבה תעשייתית ובכך נתן לי את הכלים לראות כיצד מחקרי משפיע על בעיות מן העולם האמיתי.

ברצוני להודות להורי, ישראל וסימה ויזל, שלימדו אותי לשאול, לחקור, להתמיד ולהאמין בעצמי. הם תמכו בי בכל ההיבטים של לימודי, מבית הספר היסודי ועד בית הספר ללימודי מוסמכים. אני מודה גם לאחי ואחותי, שי ושיר, על שהביעו תמיכה והערכה לפועלי. כל אלה שימשו השראה למחקרי.

# בדיקת מודל מבוססת ספיקות על ידי שימוש באינטינטרפולולציה ובנייה אינקרמנטלית של פסוקיות אינדוקטיביות לנכונות ודאית 

## חיבור על מחקר

לשם מילוי חלקי של הדרישות לקבלת התואר<br>דוקטור לפילוסופיה

## יקיר ויזל

הוגש לסנט הטכניון מכון טכנולוגי לישראל

בדיקת מודל מבוססת ספיקות על ידי שימוש באינטינטרפולציה ובנייה אינקרמנטלית של פסוקיות אינדוקטיביות לנכונות ודאית

## יקיר ויזל


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ In these settings interpolants can only be computed for an unsatisfiable formula.

[^1]:    ${ }^{1}$ Note that this is an abuse of the fixpoint notation.

[^2]:    ${ }^{2}$ Since an over-approximated sets of reachable states are computed, the computed sets are not monotonic. Therefore, a monotonic function $g$ for which the existence of a fixpoint is guaranteed cannot be defined.

[^3]:    ${ }^{1}$ If a global strengthening step is performed at $i=n+1$, then $F_{n+1}$ can be initialized to $I_{n+1}$.

[^4]:    ${ }^{2}$ Note that instead of performing a local strengthening of $\bar{B}$ as part of the iterative local strengthening, an interpolation-sequence $\left\langle J_{0}, J_{1}, \ldots, J_{i+1}\right\rangle$ for $\left\langle A_{1}=T R \wedge B_{n-i}^{\langle i+1\rangle}, A_{2}=\right.$ $\left.T R, \ldots A_{i}=T R, A_{i+1}=I N I T\right\rangle$ can be used to strengthen $B_{n-i+1}, \ldots, B_{n}$ by setting $B_{n-i+j}=B_{n-i+j} \wedge J_{j}$ for $1 \leq j \leq i$, and to initialize $B_{n+1}$ to $J_{i+1}$. In this case, iterative local strengthening will be performed only forward, updating $\bar{F}$ only. For simplicity of the presentation, we use iterative local strengthening both forward and backward instead of using an interpolation-sequence for the backward update.

[^5]:    ${ }^{3}$ An EDA company: http://www.jasper-da.com

[^6]:    ${ }^{1}$ Variable elimination [24] is an operation that eliminates all occurrences of a variable $v$ from a CNF formula by replacing clauses containing $v$ with the result of pairwise resolutions between all clauses containing the literal $v$ and those containing the literal $\neg v$

[^7]:    ${ }^{2}$ Some works choose different ways of increasing $k$. For example, $k$ can be increased by the number of iterations executed in the inner loop: $k=k+n$. In our experiments $k=k+1$ yielded better results.

[^8]:    ${ }^{3}$ https://bitbucket.org/alanmi/abc

[^9]:    ${ }^{1}$ In fact, in order to remove a bad state $b$ from $F_{i}$, IC3 finds a clause $c$ that is an invariant up to $i$ and implies $\neg b$, and adds $c$ to $F_{i}$ as a conjunct.

[^10]:    ${ }^{2}$ Note that $s_{l}$ is an abstract state thus representing a set of concrete states. Therefore, an intersection ( $\cap$ ) is used. Also, requirement (2) dismisses paths that are known to be spurious based on $\bar{F} \cdot \min \{j, k\}$ is used for the case where $j=k+1$, in which nonempty intersection is required only up to $k$.

[^11]:    ${ }^{3}$ An abstract counterexample is found w.r.t. $\bar{F}=\left\langle F_{0}, \ldots, F_{k+1}\right\rangle$ produced in iteration $k$, where $|\bar{F}|=k+2$. When A-IC3 is re-invoked, $k$ is set to $|\bar{F}|-1=k+1$.

[^12]:    ${ }^{4} \mathrm{IC} 3$ does not make a distinction between may and must obligations and handles them all the same since in the concrete case, a longer counterexample is always a valid path (its suffix reaching a violation is always valid).

[^13]:    ${ }^{5} \mathrm{~A}$ state $t_{a}$ is represented by a conjunction of literals, which makes its negation $\neg t_{a}$ a clause (i.e., a disjunction of literals). A subclause of $\neg t_{a}$ consists of a subset of its literals.
    ${ }^{6}$ Note that while $c$ is inductive w.r.t. $M_{\min -1}$ up to $\min -1$, it is not necessarily inductive w.r.t. $M_{i}$ where $i<\min -1$ (in case $U_{i} \subset U_{\min -1}$ ). Still, it is safely added to $F_{i+1}$ for $i<\min -1$ since it is an invariant w.r.t. $M_{c}$.

[^14]:    ${ }^{7}$ An EDA company: http://www.jasper-da.com

